



DF-760
BF-720
MT-720
PH-5A/5C/5D

**SERVICE
MANUAL**

CAUTION

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

ATTENTION

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACÉE PAR UN MODÈLE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISÉES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNÉES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

Revision history

Revision	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	November 26, 2008	1-3-2, 1-3-3, 1-3-5 to 1-3-7, 2-4-1	-


This page is intentionally left blank.


Safety precautions


This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

Safety warnings and precautions


Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

 **DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

Symbols

The triangle () symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.



General warning.



Warning of risk of electric shock.



Warning of high temperature.

 indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.



General prohibited action.



Disassembly prohibited.

 indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



General action required.



Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.



Always ground the copier.

1. Installation Precautions

WARNING

- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current.
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities.



CAUTION:

- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury.
- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock.
- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material.



This may cause fire.



- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance.



- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it.
- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury.



- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention.













- Advise customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook.







2.Precautions for Maintenance

WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. 
- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. 
- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. 
- Always use parts having the correct specifications. 
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. 
- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. 
- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. 
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. 
- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. 
- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. 

CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. 
- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. 
- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. 
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. 

• Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement.



• Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself.



• Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item.



• Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks.



• Remove toner completely from electronic components.



• Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged.



• After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws.



• Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary.



• Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below:



- Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.
- Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.
- Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.
- Always wash hands afterwards.

• Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc.



• Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately.



3.Miscellaneous

WARNING

• Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas.



This page is intentionally left blank.

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications	
1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names	1-1-2
1-1-3 Machine cross section	1-1-3
1-2 Installation	
1-2-1 Installation environment	1-2-1
1-2-2 Unpacking	1-2-2
(1) Unpacking (finisher)	1-2-2
(2) Remove the tapes (finisher)	1-2-3
(3) Unpacking (center-folding unit)	1-2-4
(4) Remove the tapes (center-folding unit)	1-2-5
(5) Unpacking (mailbox)	1-2-6
(6) Remove the tapes (mailbox)	1-2-7
1-3 Maintenance Mode	
1-3-1 Maintenance mode	1-3-1
(1) Executing a maintenance item	1-3-1
(2) Maintenance mode item list	1-3-2
(3) Contents of maintenance mode items	1-3-3
1-4 Troubleshooting	
1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-4-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-4-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions	1-4-1
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-4-5
1-4-2 Self-diagnosis	1-4-7
(1) Self-diagnostic function	1-4-7
(2) Self diagnostic codes	1-4-7
1-4-3 Electric problems	1-4-13
1-4-4 Mechanical problems	1-4-16
1-5 Assembly and Disassembly	
1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly	1-5-1
(1) Precautions	1-5-1
1-5-2 Assembly and Disassembly	1-5-2
(1) Correcting paper curling	1-5-2
(2) Centering punch-holes	1-5-4
1-6 Requirements on PWB Replacement	
1-6-1 Remarks on finisher main PWB replacement	1-6-1
1-6-2 Remarks on centerfold main PWB replacement	1-6-1
2-1 Mechanical Construction	
2-1-1 Paper insertion and right sub tray eject sections	2-1-1
(1) Eject operation to the right sub tray	2-1-2
2-1-2 Feedshift and left sub tray eject sections	2-1-3
(1) Feedshift operation to left sub tray or inner tray	2-1-4
2-1-3 Inner tray section	2-1-5
(1) Relief path operation	2-1-7
(2) Eject operation to the main tray	2-1-8
(3) Paper conveying operation to optional center-folding unit	2-1-9
2-1-4 Staple section	2-1-10
2-1-5 Main tray eject section	2-1-11
(1) Main tray elevation operation	2-1-12
2-1-6 Center-folding unit section (option)	2-1-13
(1) Paper centerfold operation	2-1-15
2-1-7 Mailbox (option)	2-1-16
(1) Eject operation to mailbox tray	2-1-18

2-1-8 Punch unit (option).....	2-1-19
2-2 Electrical Parts Layout	
2-2-1 Electrical parts layout.....	2-2-1
(1) PWBs	2-2-1
(2) Switches and sensors	2-2-2
(3) Motors	2-2-4
(4) Solenoids.....	2-2-5
(5) Center-folding unit (option).....	2-2-6
(6) Mailbox (option).....	2-2-7
(7) Punch unit (option).....	2-2-8
2-3 Operation of the PWBs	
2-3-1 Finisher main PWB	2-3-1
2-3-2 Inner tray PWB.....	2-3-8
2-3-3 Centerfold main PWB	2-3-12
2-3-4 Mailbox main PWB.....	2-3-17
2-4 Appendixes	
Maintenance parts list.....	2-4-1
Periodic maintenance procedures	2-4-3
Wiring diagram No. 1	2-4-7
Wiring diagram No. 2	2-4-8
Wiring diagram No.3	2-4-9
Wiring diagram No. 4	2-4-10
Wiring diagram No. 5	2-4-11
Wiring diagram No. 6	2-4-12
INSTALLATION GUIDE	
CENTER-FOLDING UNIT	
MAILBOX	
HOLE PUNCH UNIT	

1-1-1 Specifications

Finisher

Type	Floor model
Number of trays	3 trays
Tray capacity	Main tray (tray A): A3, B4, Ledger, Legal, 8K: 1500 sheets A4, A4R, B5, Letter, LetterR, 16K: 3000 sheets Left sub tray (tray B): A3, B4, Folio, Ledger, Legal, 12" x 18", 8K: 100 sheets A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, A5R, Letter, LetterR, statementR, 16K, 16KR: 200 sheets Right sub tray (tray C): A4, B5, A5, A5R, Letter, statementR, 16K: 50 sheets
Staple unit	Stapling capacity A3, B4, Folio, Ledger, Legal, 8.5 x 13.5", 8K: 30 sheets A4, A4R, B5, Letter, LetterR, 16K: 50 sheets Auto select staple mode: 30 sheets (Paper weight: 90 g/m ² or less) Stapling tray capacity Stapling 2 to 4 sheets: 150 set Stapling 5 to 10 sheets: 100 set Stapling 11 to 30 sheets: 50 set Stapling 31 to 50 sheets: 3000 sheets (Only for A4, A4R, B5, Letter, LetterR and 16K)
Power source	Electrically connected to the machine
Dimensions	687 (W) x 573 (D) x 1087 (H) mm 27 1/16" (W) x 22 9/16" (D) x 42 13/16" (H)
Weight	Approx. 55 kg/Approx. 121.3 lbs

Center-folding unit (option)

Foldable sizes	A3, B4, A4R, Letter, LetterR
Foldable number of sheets	1 to 16 (no stapling for 1 sheet)
Maximum number for storage	5 or less copies in a set: 30 sets 6 to 9 copies in a set: 16 sets 10 to 16 copies in a set: 10 sets
Paper weight	60 to 200 g/m ² (1 cover sheet only for 91 g/m ² or greater)

Mailbox (option)

Number of trays	7 trays
Paper size	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Folio, Ledger, Legal, 8.5 x 13.5", Letter, LetterR, statementR, 8K, 16K, 16KR
Maximum number for storage	A3, B4, Folio, Ledger, Legal, 8.5 x 13.5", 8K: 50 sheets/bin A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Letter, LetterR, statementR, 16K, 16KR: 100 sheets/bin (Paper weight: 60 to 163 g/m ²)
Dimensions	510 (W) x 400 (D) x 470 (H) mm 20 1/16" (W) x 15 3/4" (D) x 18 1/2" (H)
Weight	Approx. 10 kg or less/22 lbs or less

Punch unit (option)

Paper size	Main tray (tray A): A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, Folio, Ledger, Legal, 8.5 x 13.5", Letter, LetterR Left sub tray (tray B) A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Folio, Ledger, Legal, 8.5 x 13.5", Letter, LetterR, statementR
------------------	---

NOTE: These specifications are subject to change without notice.

1-1-2 Parts names

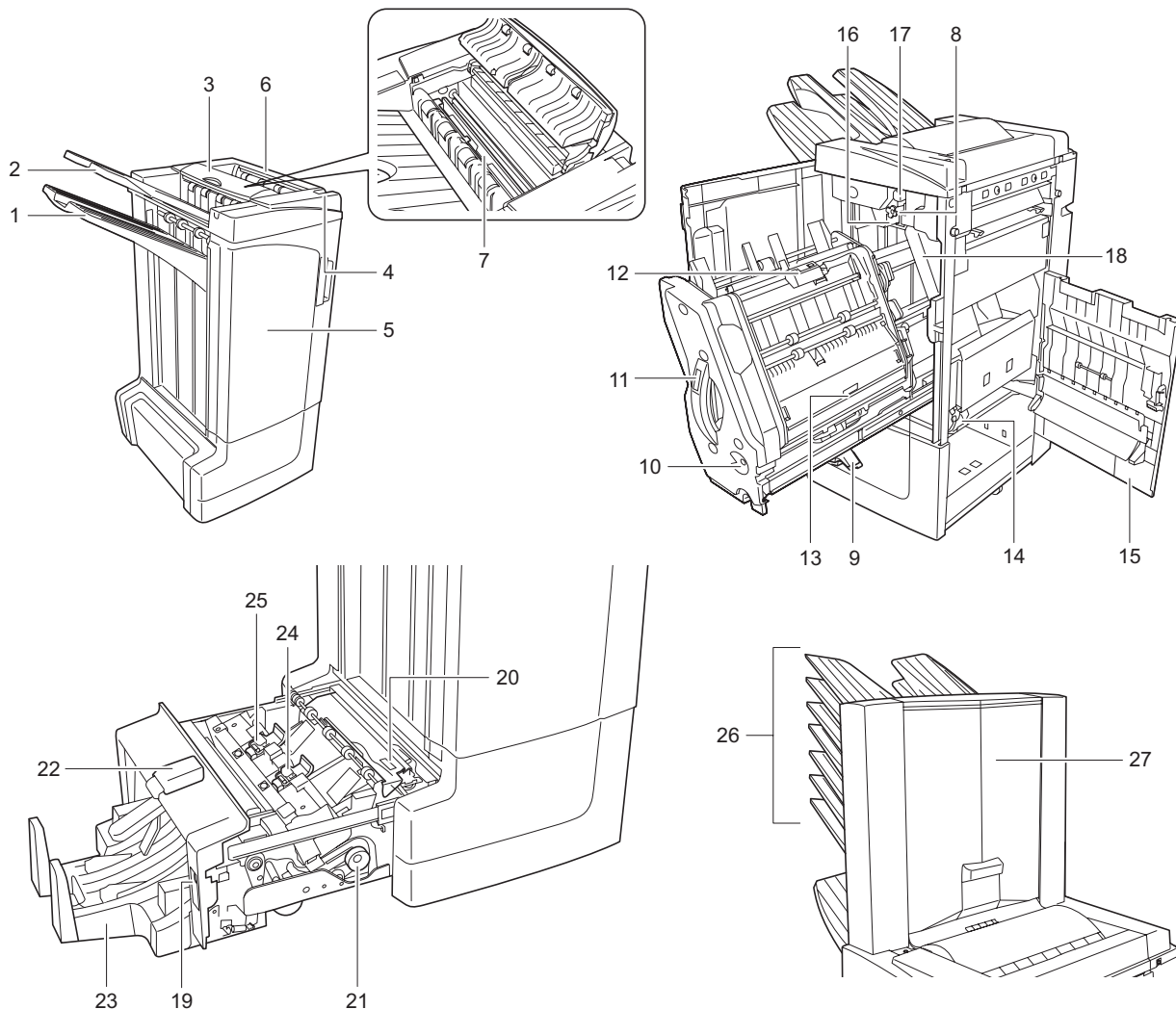


Figure 1-1-1

Finisher

1. Main tray (tray A)
2. Left sub tray (tray B)
3. Right sub tray (tray C)
4. Finisher release lever
5. Front cover
6. Top cover
7. Paper guide plate
8. Conveyor knob
9. Inner tray paper holder
10. Inner tray confirmation window
11. Inner tray
12. Inner tray cover 1
13. Inner tray cover 2
14. Staple cartridge holder A
15. Right cover
16. Pressure roller lower adjust knob
17. Pressure roller upper adjust knob

Punch Unit (option)

18. Punch waste box

Center-folding Unit (option)

19. Centerfold unit release lever
20. Centerfold unit paper guide plate
21. Centerfold unit conveyor knob
22. Centerfold unit top cover
23. Centerfold tray
24. Staple cartridge holder B
25. Staple cartridge holder C

Mailbox (option)

26. Trays 1 - 7
27. Mailbox cover

1-1-3 Machine cross section

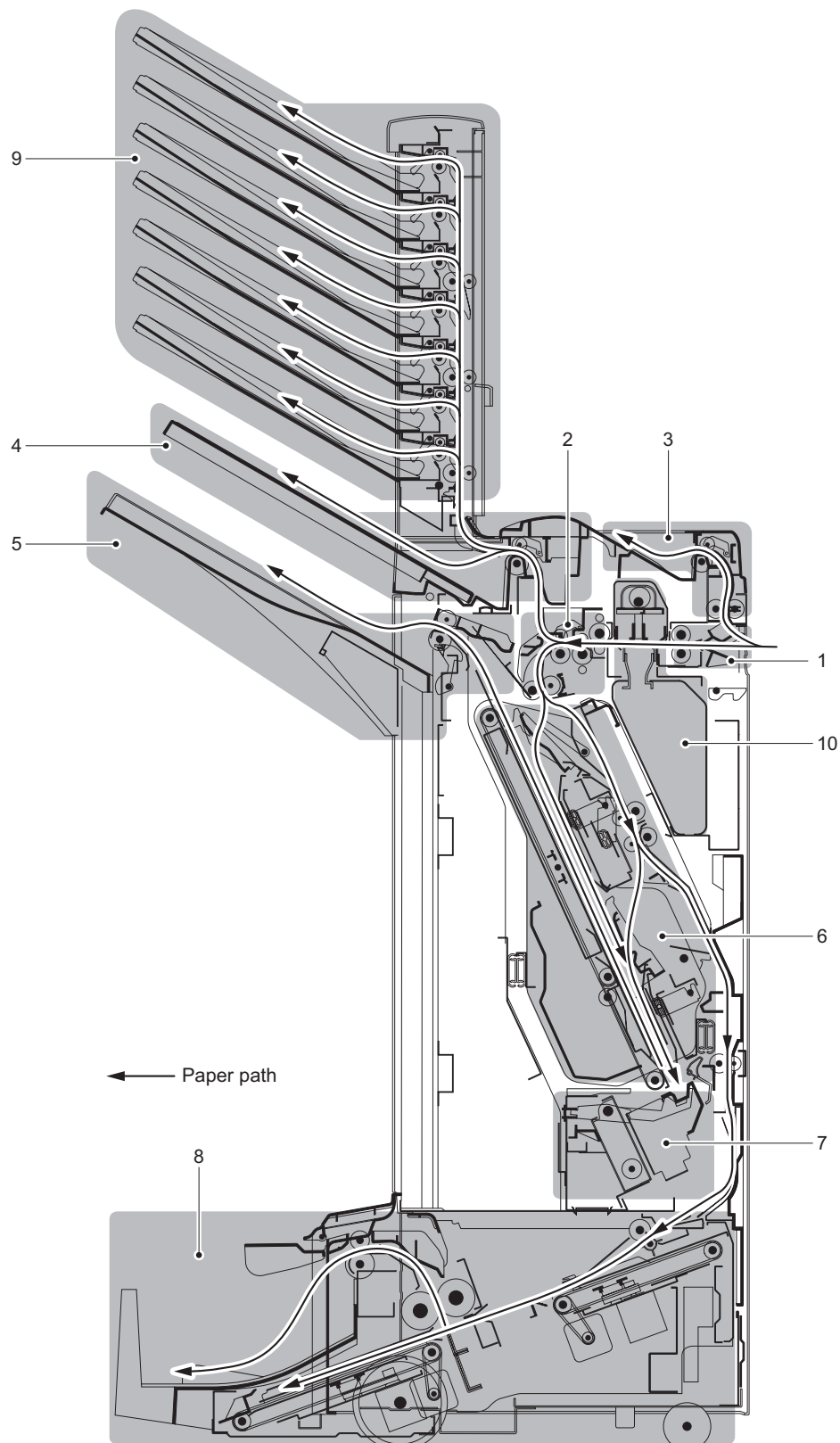


Figure 1-1-2 Machine cross section

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Paper insertion section | 6. Internal tray section |
| 2. Feedshift section | 7. Staple section |
| 3. Right sub tray eject section | 8. Center-folding unit (option) |
| 4. Left sub tray eject section | 9. Mailbox (option) |
| 5. Main tray eject section | 10. Punch unit (option) |

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-2-1 Installation environment

Installation location (Be based on the machine establishment place.)

Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photo-conductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.

Avoid extremes of temperature and humidity, abrupt ambient temperature changes, and hot or cold air directed onto the machine.

Avoid dust and vibration.

Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.

Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).

Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photo-conductor, such as mercury, acidic or alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NOx, SOx gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.

Select a room with good ventilation.

1-2-2 Unpacking

(1) Unpacking (finisher)

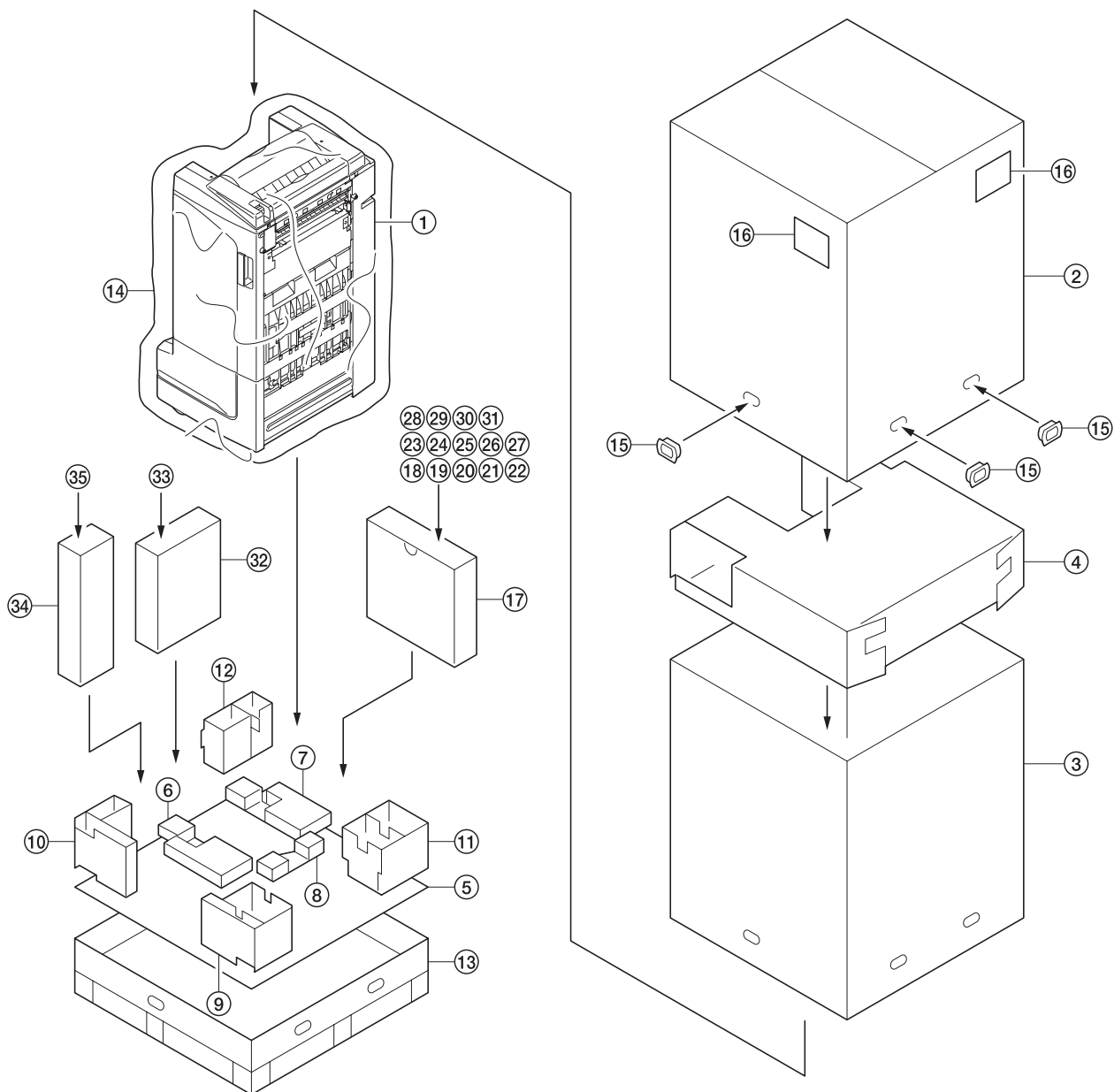


Figure 1-2-1 Unpacking

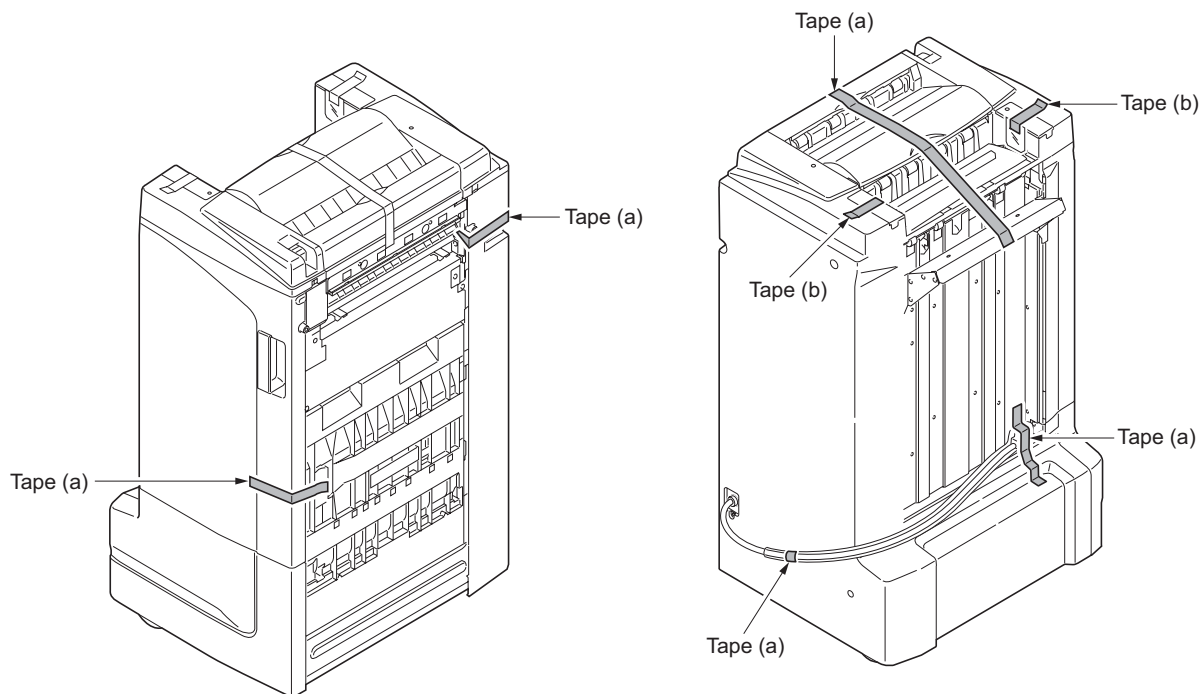
- | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Document finisher | 13. Skid | 25. M4 x 10 tap Tight S screw |
| 2. Outer case | 14. Machine cover | 26. M4 x 8 tap Tight S screw |
| 3. Inner case | 15. Hinge joints | 27. M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw |
| 4. Top pad | 16. Barcode labels | 28. Spring hook |
| 5. Sheet | 17. Accessory case | 29. Staple cartridge |
| 6. Bottom front pad | 18. Main tray | 30. Sponge |
| 7. Bottom rear pad | 19. Sub tray | 31. Operation guide |
| 8. Bottom right pad | 20. Connecting plate | 32. Sleeve cover |
| 9. Right lower front pad | 21. Base slider B | 33. Internal tray cover |
| 10. Left lower front pad | 22. Plate | 34. Slider pad |
| 11. Right lower rear pad | 23. Nuts | 35. Base slider A |
| 12. Left lower rear pad | 24. Pins | |

Caution: Place the machine on a level surface. See the Installation Guide for installation.

www.tonerplus.com.ua

(2) Remove the tapes (finisher)**Procedure**

1. Remove five tapes (a).
Remove two tapes (b) after fitting the left sub tray. (see the Installation Guide)

**Figure 1-2-2**

(3) Unpacking (center-folding unit)

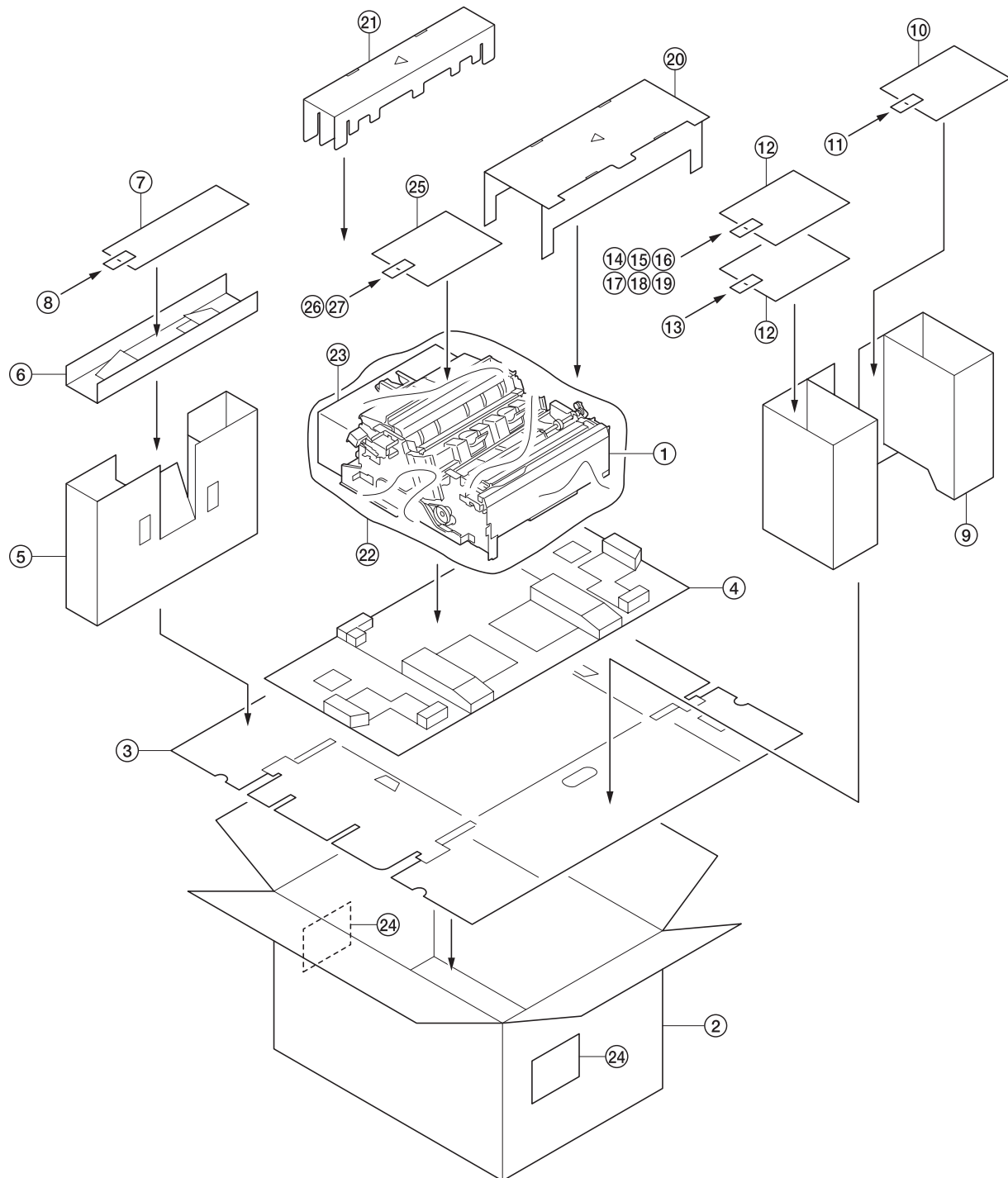


Figure 1-2-3 Unpacking

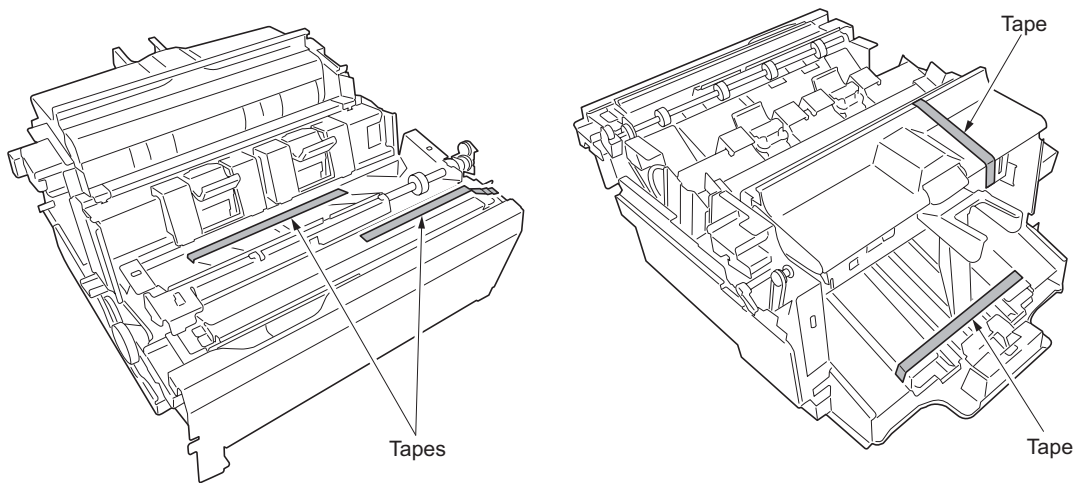
- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Center-folding unit | 10. Air-padded bag | 19. M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws |
| 2. Outer case | 11. Folding tray | 20. Top pad A |
| 3. Bottom pad | 12. Plastic bag | 21. Top pad B |
| 4. Bottom spacer | 13. Rear cover | 22. Machine cover |
| 5. Left spacer | 14. Front cover | 23. Left inner spacer |
| 6. ACC pad | 15. Douser | 24. Barcode labels |
| 7. Air-padded bag | 16. Cover handle saddle | 25. Plastic bag |
| 8. Sliders | 17. Cover V | 26. Level |
| 9. Right spacer | 18. M3 x 8 tap-tight P screws | 27. Installation Guide |

Caution: See the Installation Guide for installation.

www.tonerplus.com.ua

(4) Remove the tapes (center-folding unit)**Procedure**

1. Remove four tapes.

**Figure 1-2-4**

(5) Unpacking (mailbox)

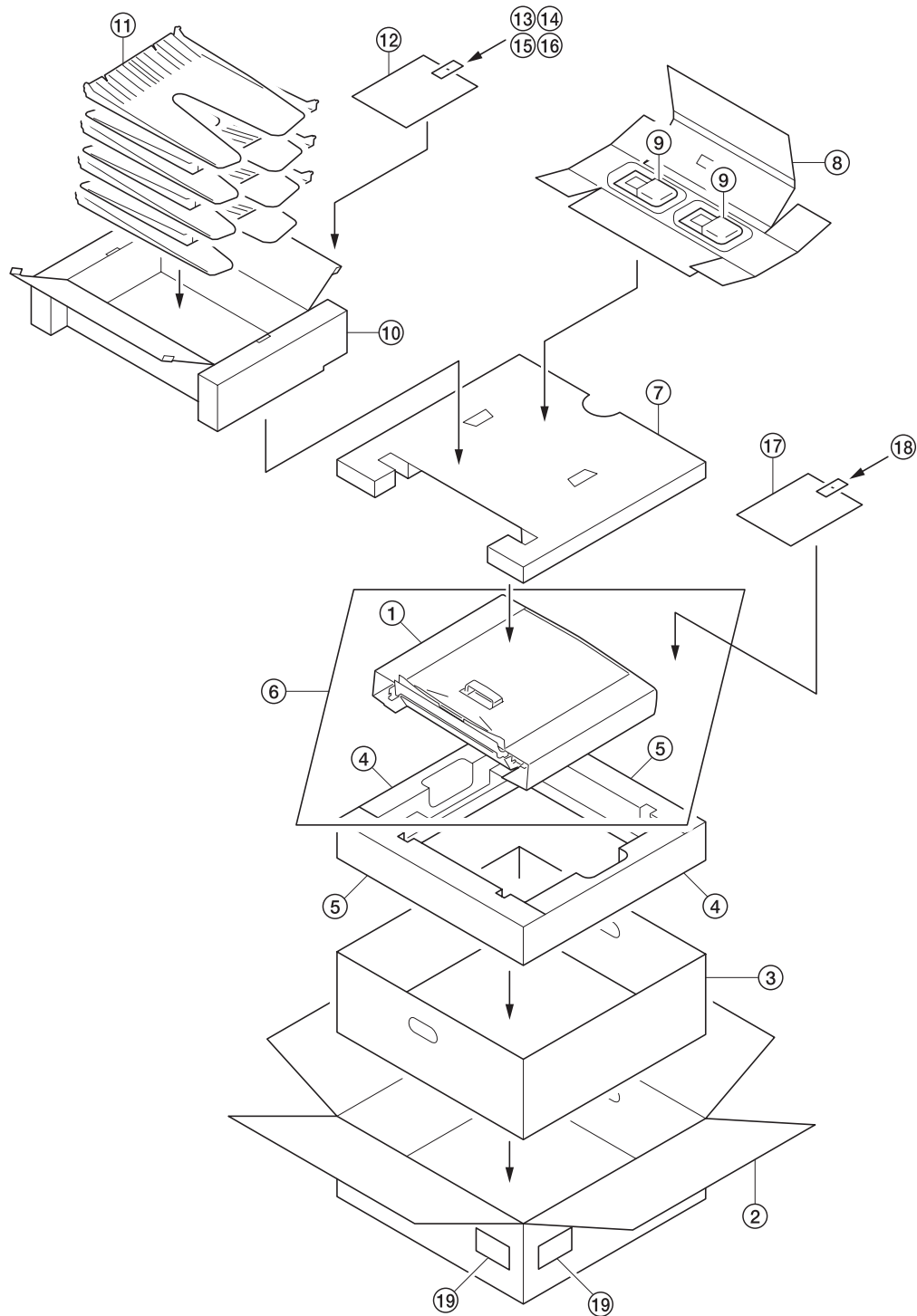


Figure 1-2-5 Unpacking

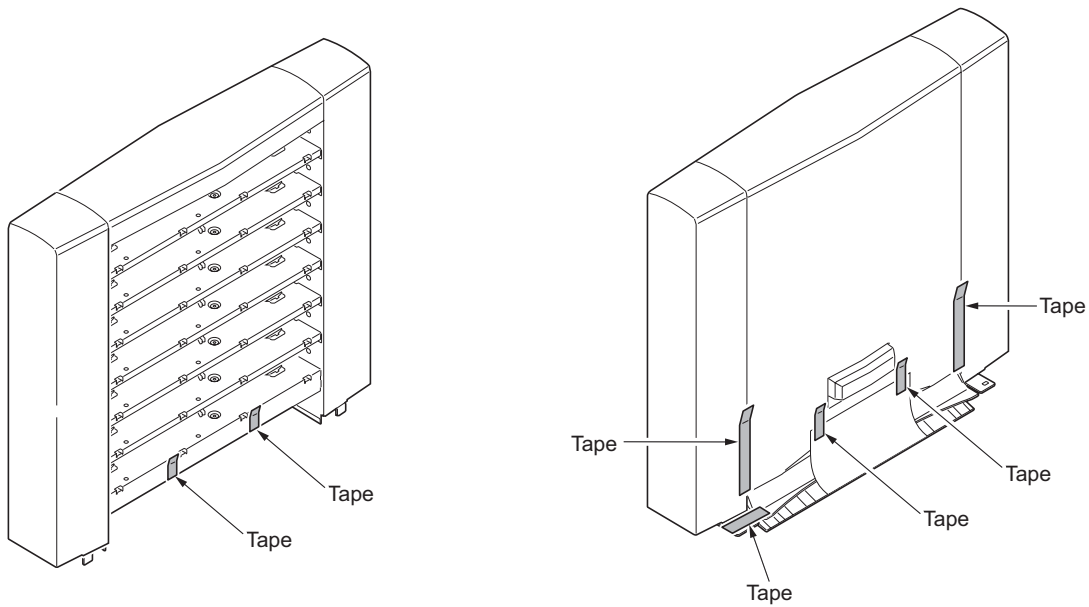
- | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Mailbox | 8. Side spacer | 15. M4 x 14 tap-tight S screws |
| 2. Outer case | 9. Plate feet | 16. M4 x 10 tap-tight S screws |
| 3. Inner case | 10. Accessory case | 17. Plastic bag |
| 4. Bottom pad A | 11. Trays | 18. Tray name label |
| 5. Bottom pad B | 12. Plastic bag | 19. Barcode labels |
| 6. Plastic sheet | 13. Front mounting plate cover | |
| 7. Inner pad | 14. Rear mounting plate cover | |

Caution: See the Installation Guide for installation.

www.tonerplus.com.ua

(6) Remove the tapes (mailbox)**Procedure**

1. Remove seven tapes.

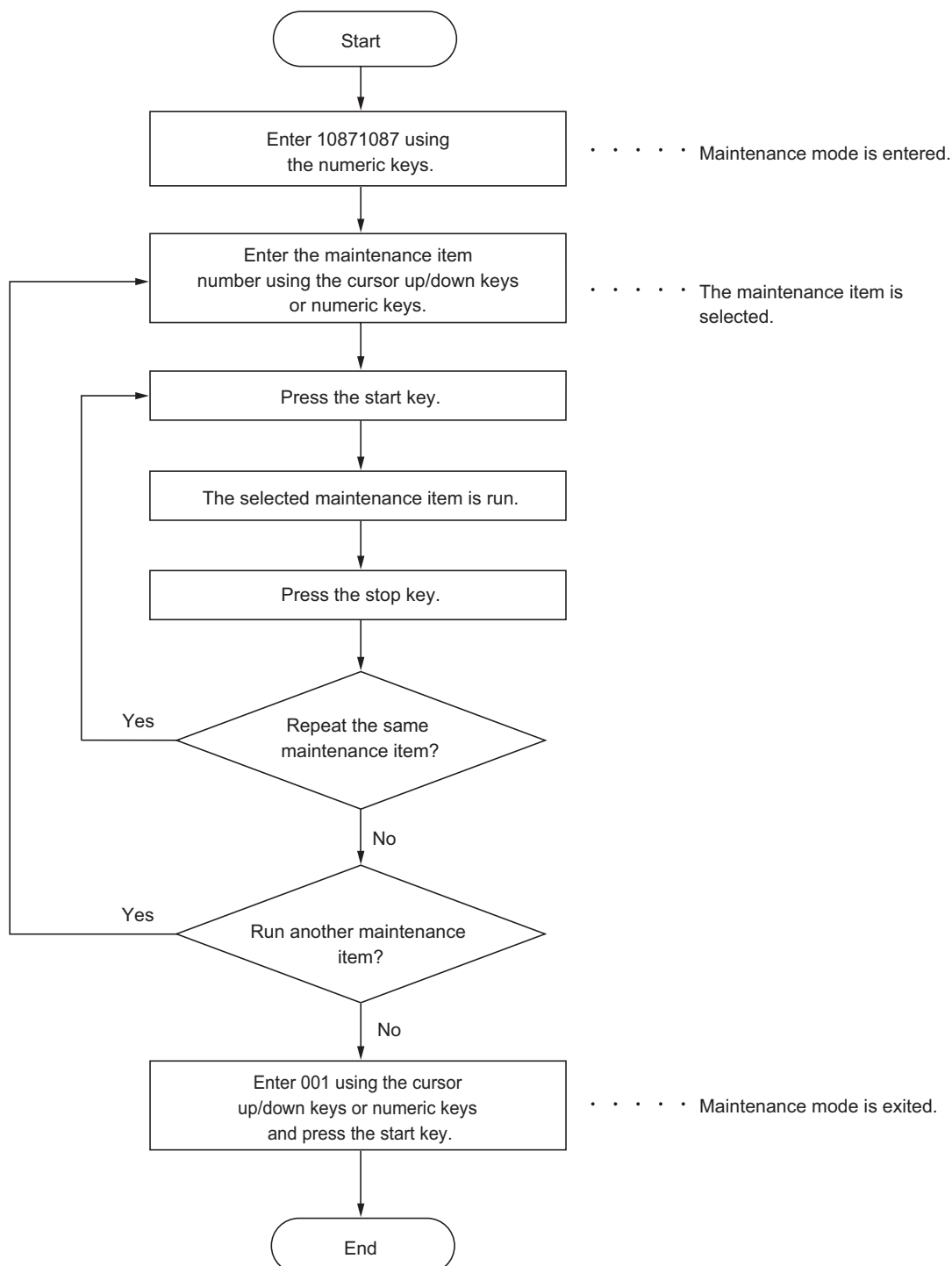
**Figure 1-2-6**

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-3-1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

(1) Executing a maintenance item



(2) Maintenance mode item list

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
General	U019	Displaying the ROM version	-
Operation panel and support equipment	U234	Setting punch destination	AUTO
	U237	Setting finisher stack quantity	0/0*1
	U240	Checking the operation of the finisher	-
	U241	Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher	-
	U246	Setting the paper ejection device 3000 FINISHER BOOKLET FOLDER	0/0/0/0/0/0*1 0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0*1
Other	U902	Checking/clearing finisher punch count	-
	U905	Checking counts by optional devices	-

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U021

(3) Contents of maintenance mode items

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																														
U019	<p>Displaying the ROM version</p> <p>Description Displays the part number of the ROM fitted to each PWB.</p> <p>Purpose To check the part number or to decide, if the newest version of ROM is installed.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The ROM version are displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>MAIN</td><td>Main ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>MMI</td><td>Operation ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>ENGINE</td><td>Engine ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>ENGINE BOOT</td><td>Engine booting</td></tr> <tr><td>SCANNER</td><td>Scanner ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>BROWSER</td><td>Browser ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>OPTION LANGUAGE</td><td>Optional language ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>DICTIONARY</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr><td>DBA</td><td>Database connection</td></tr> <tr><td>Solution Framework</td><td>Framework</td></tr> <tr><td>MOTOR CPU</td><td>Motor CPU</td></tr> <tr><td>MOTOR CPU BOOT</td><td>Motor CPU booting</td></tr> <tr><td>H VLT CPU</td><td>High voltage CPU</td></tr> <tr><td>H VLT CPU BOOT</td><td>High voltage CPU booting</td></tr> <tr><td>SLEEP CPU</td><td>Sleep CPU</td></tr> <tr><td>SLEEP CPU BOOT</td><td>Sleep CPU booting</td></tr> <tr><td>DP</td><td>Optional DP ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>500x2PF</td><td>Optional paper feeder ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>3000PF</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>1000DF</td><td>Optional document finisher ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>3000DF MAIN</td><td>3000-sheet document finisher main ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>3000DF MIDDLE</td><td>3000-sheet document finisher Inner tray ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>MAIL BOX</td><td>Optional mailbox ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>BOOKLET</td><td>Optional center-folding unit ROM IC</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX BOOT1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX APL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX IPL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX BOOT2</td><td>Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX APL2</td><td>Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX IPL2</td><td>Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Main ROM IC	MMI	Operation ROM IC	ENGINE	Engine ROM IC	ENGINE BOOT	Engine booting	SCANNER	Scanner ROM IC	BROWSER	Browser ROM IC	OPTION LANGUAGE	Optional language ROM IC	DICTIONARY	-	DBA	Database connection	Solution Framework	Framework	MOTOR CPU	Motor CPU	MOTOR CPU BOOT	Motor CPU booting	H VLT CPU	High voltage CPU	H VLT CPU BOOT	High voltage CPU booting	SLEEP CPU	Sleep CPU	SLEEP CPU BOOT	Sleep CPU booting	DP	Optional DP ROM IC	500x2PF	Optional paper feeder ROM IC	3000PF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder ROM IC	1000DF	Optional document finisher ROM IC	3000DF MAIN	3000-sheet document finisher main ROM IC	3000DF MIDDLE	3000-sheet document finisher Inner tray ROM IC	MAIL BOX	Optional mailbox ROM IC	BOOKLET	Optional center-folding unit ROM IC	FAX BOOT1	Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)	FAX APL1	Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)	FAX IPL1	Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)	FAX BOOT2	Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)	FAX APL2	Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)	FAX IPL2	Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)
Display	Description																																																														
MAIN	Main ROM IC																																																														
MMI	Operation ROM IC																																																														
ENGINE	Engine ROM IC																																																														
ENGINE BOOT	Engine booting																																																														
SCANNER	Scanner ROM IC																																																														
BROWSER	Browser ROM IC																																																														
OPTION LANGUAGE	Optional language ROM IC																																																														
DICTIONARY	-																																																														
DBA	Database connection																																																														
Solution Framework	Framework																																																														
MOTOR CPU	Motor CPU																																																														
MOTOR CPU BOOT	Motor CPU booting																																																														
H VLT CPU	High voltage CPU																																																														
H VLT CPU BOOT	High voltage CPU booting																																																														
SLEEP CPU	Sleep CPU																																																														
SLEEP CPU BOOT	Sleep CPU booting																																																														
DP	Optional DP ROM IC																																																														
500x2PF	Optional paper feeder ROM IC																																																														
3000PF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder ROM IC																																																														
1000DF	Optional document finisher ROM IC																																																														
3000DF MAIN	3000-sheet document finisher main ROM IC																																																														
3000DF MIDDLE	3000-sheet document finisher Inner tray ROM IC																																																														
MAIL BOX	Optional mailbox ROM IC																																																														
BOOKLET	Optional center-folding unit ROM IC																																																														
FAX BOOT1	Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)																																																														
FAX APL1	Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)																																																														
FAX IPL1	Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)																																																														
FAX BOOT2	Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																																														
FAX APL2	Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																																														
FAX IPL2	Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																																														

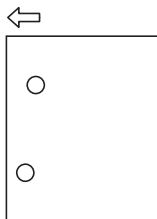
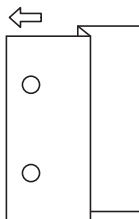
Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U234	<p>Setting punch destination</p> <p>Description Sets the destination of optional punch unit of 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To be set when installing a different punch unit from the destination of the machine.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the destination. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AUTO</td><td>With no punch unit</td></tr> <tr> <td>JAPAN METRIC</td><td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: AUTO</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 	Display	Description	AUTO	With no punch unit	JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications								
Display	Description																		
AUTO	With no punch unit																		
JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications																		
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																		
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																		
U237	<p>Setting finisher stack quantity</p> <p>Description Sets the number of sheets of each stack on the main tray and on the Inner tray in 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting when a stack malfunction has occurred.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Setting: [MAIN TRAY]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>3000 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>1500 sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Setting: [MIDDLE TRAY]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray	MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying	Display	Description	0	3000 sheets	1	1500 sheets	Display	Description	0	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets	1	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets
Display	Description																		
MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray																		
MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying																		
Display	Description																		
0	3000 sheets																		
1	1500 sheets																		
Display	Description																		
0	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets																		
1	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets																		

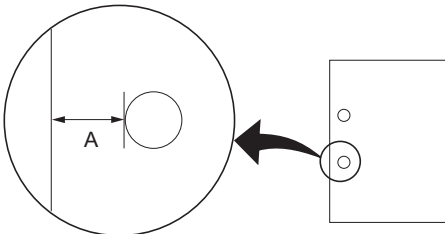
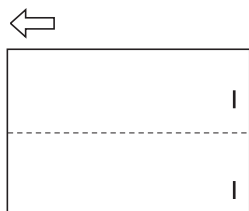
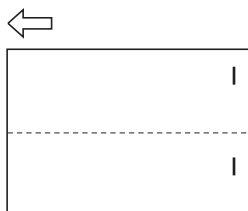
Maintenance item No.	Description																																																		
U240	<p>Checking the operation of the finisher</p> <p>Description Turns each motor and solenoid of 3000-sheet document finisher ON.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each motor and solenoid of the document finisher.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be checked. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FINISHER MOTOR</td><td>Checking the motor of the document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER SOL</td><td>Checking the solenoid of the document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIL BOX</td><td>Checking the motor of the mailbox</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET</td><td>Checking the motor of the center-folding unit</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: [FINISHER MOTOR]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the item to be operated. 2. Press the start key. The operation starts. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Motor</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED IN MOTOR M</td><td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED IN MOTOR L</td><td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR H</td><td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR M</td><td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR L</td><td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT MOTOR H</td><td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT MOTOR M</td><td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT MOTOR L</td><td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB PATH MOTOR H</td><td>Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterclockwise</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB PATH MOTOR M</td><td>Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP MOTOR</td><td>Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR</td><td>Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(A3)</td><td>Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(LD)</td><td>Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE FR MOTOR</td><td>Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE S MOTOR</td><td>Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE MOTOR</td><td>Staple motor (STM) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY MOTOR</td><td>Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH MOTOR</td><td>Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	FINISHER MOTOR	Checking the motor of the document finisher	FINISHER SOL	Checking the solenoid of the document finisher	MAIL BOX	Checking the motor of the mailbox	BOOKLET	Checking the motor of the center-folding unit	Display	Motor	FEED IN MOTOR M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed	FEED IN MOTOR L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed	CONV MOTOR H	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed	CONV MOTOR M	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed	CONV MOTOR L	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed	EJECT MOTOR H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed	EJECT MOTOR M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed	EJECT MOTOR L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed	SUB PATH MOTOR H	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterclockwise	SUB PATH MOTOR M	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise	BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on	BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on	WIDTH TEST(A3)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on	WIDTH TEST(LD)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on	STAPLE FR MOTOR	Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on	STAPLE S MOTOR	Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on	STAPLE MOTOR	Staple motor (STM) is turned on	TRAY MOTOR	Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on	PUNCH MOTOR	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on
Display	Description																																																		
FINISHER MOTOR	Checking the motor of the document finisher																																																		
FINISHER SOL	Checking the solenoid of the document finisher																																																		
MAIL BOX	Checking the motor of the mailbox																																																		
BOOKLET	Checking the motor of the center-folding unit																																																		
Display	Motor																																																		
FEED IN MOTOR M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed																																																		
FEED IN MOTOR L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed																																																		
CONV MOTOR H	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed																																																		
CONV MOTOR M	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed																																																		
CONV MOTOR L	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed																																																		
EJECT MOTOR H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed																																																		
EJECT MOTOR M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed																																																		
EJECT MOTOR L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed																																																		
SUB PATH MOTOR H	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterclockwise																																																		
SUB PATH MOTOR M	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise																																																		
BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on																																																		
BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on																																																		
WIDTH TEST(A3)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on																																																		
WIDTH TEST(LD)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on																																																		
STAPLE FR MOTOR	Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on																																																		
STAPLE S MOTOR	Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on																																																		
STAPLE MOTOR	Staple motor (STM) is turned on																																																		
TRAY MOTOR	Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on																																																		
PUNCH MOTOR	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on																																																		

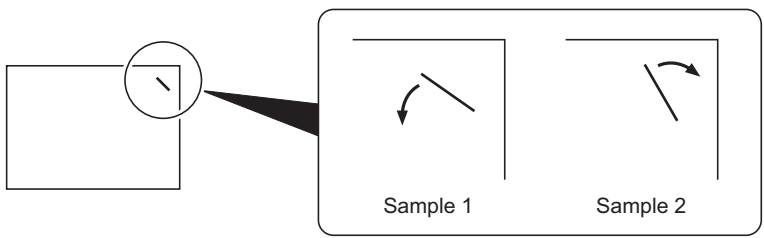
Maintenance item No.	Description																																														
U240	<p>Method: [FINISHER SOL]</p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The operation starts.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Solenoid</th></tr><tr><td>FEED IN SOL</td><td>Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)</td></tr><tr><td>REAR DOWN SOL 1</td><td>Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)</td></tr><tr><td>REAR DOWN SOL 2</td><td>Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)</td></tr><tr><td>SUB PATH SOL</td><td>Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)</td></tr><tr><td>SUB TRAY R SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)</td></tr><tr><td>SUB TRAY L SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)</td></tr><tr><td>BOOKLET SOL</td><td>Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)</td></tr><tr><td>PADDLE SOL</td><td>Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)</td></tr><tr><td>HOLD DOWN SOL</td><td>Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)</td></tr><tr><td>EJECT SOL</td><td>Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)</td></tr><tr><td>PUNCH SOL</td><td>Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)</td></tr></table> <p>Method: [MAIL BOX]</p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The operation starts.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motor</th></tr><tr><td>CARRY ROLL</td><td>Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at paper conveying</td></tr><tr><td>BRANCH ROLL</td><td>Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at feedshift operation</td></tr></table> <p>Method: [BOOKLET]</p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The operation starts.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motor</th></tr><tr><td>CONV MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold main motor (CMM)</td></tr><tr><td>BLADE MOTOR</td><td>Blade motor (BLM)</td></tr><tr><td>BUNDLE UP MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)</td></tr><tr><td>BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH TEST(A3)</td><td>Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH TEST(LD)</td><td>Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)</td></tr><tr><td>STAPLE MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)</td></tr></table> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop key with the operation stopped. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Solenoid	FEED IN SOL	Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)	REAR DOWN SOL 1	Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)	REAR DOWN SOL 2	Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)	SUB PATH SOL	Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)	SUB TRAY R SOL	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)	SUB TRAY L SOL	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)	BOOKLET SOL	Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)	PADDLE SOL	Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)	HOLD DOWN SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)	EJECT SOL	Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)	PUNCH SOL	Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)	Display	Motor	CARRY ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at paper conveying	BRANCH ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at feedshift operation	Display	Motor	CONV MOTOR	Centerfold main motor (CMM)	BLADE MOTOR	Blade motor (BLM)	BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)	BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)	WIDTH TEST(A3)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)	WIDTH TEST(LD)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)	STAPLE MOTOR	Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)
Display	Solenoid																																														
FEED IN SOL	Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)																																														
REAR DOWN SOL 1	Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)																																														
REAR DOWN SOL 2	Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)																																														
SUB PATH SOL	Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)																																														
SUB TRAY R SOL	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)																																														
SUB TRAY L SOL	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)																																														
BOOKLET SOL	Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)																																														
PADDLE SOL	Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)																																														
HOLD DOWN SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)																																														
EJECT SOL	Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)																																														
PUNCH SOL	Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)																																														
Display	Motor																																														
CARRY ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at paper conveying																																														
BRANCH ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at feedshift operation																																														
Display	Motor																																														
CONV MOTOR	Centerfold main motor (CMM)																																														
BLADE MOTOR	Blade motor (BLM)																																														
BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)																																														
BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)																																														
WIDTH TEST(A3)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)																																														
WIDTH TEST(LD)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)																																														
STAPLE MOTOR	Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)																																														

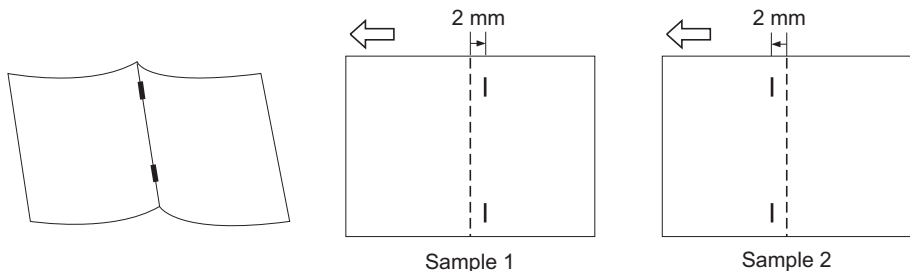
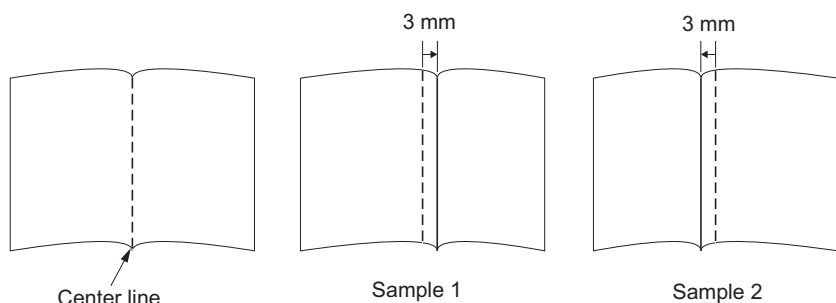
Maintenance item No.	Description																																																												
U241	<p>Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher</p> <p>Description Displays the status of each switch of 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each switch of the document finisher.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be checked. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td><td>Checking the switch of the document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIL BOX</td><td>Checking the switch of the mailbox</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET</td><td>Checking the switch of the center-folding unit</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: [FINISHER]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches and sensors</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FRONT COVER SW</td><td>Front cover switch (FCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TOP COVER SW</td><td>Top cover switch (TCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RIGHT COVER SW</td><td>Sub tray right switch (STRSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SET SW</td><td>Joint switch (JSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET SW</td><td>Centerfold set switch (CSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH TANK SW</td><td>Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY L-LIMIT SW</td><td>Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY U-LIMIT SW</td><td>Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY MIDDLE SW</td><td>Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PAPER HOLD DOWN SW</td><td>Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>LOAD DET SW</td><td>Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>HP SW</td><td>Paper entry sensor (PES)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW 1</td><td>Eject switch 1 (ESW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW 2</td><td>Eject switch 2 (ESW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW 3</td><td>Eject switch 3 (ESW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE HP SW 1</td><td>Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE HP SW 2</td><td>Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE FEED SW1</td><td>Inner tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE FEED SW2</td><td>Inner tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DET SW 1</td><td>Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DET SW 2</td><td>Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP HP SW</td><td>Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DOWN HP SW</td><td>Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW 1</td><td>Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW 2</td><td>Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	FINISHER	Checking the switch of the document finisher	MAIL BOX	Checking the switch of the mailbox	BOOKLET	Checking the switch of the center-folding unit	Display	Switches and sensors	FRONT COVER SW	Front cover switch (FCSW)	TOP COVER SW	Top cover switch (TCSW)	RIGHT COVER SW	Sub tray right switch (STRSW)	SET SW	Joint switch (JSW)	BOOKLET SW	Centerfold set switch (CSSW)	PUNCH TANK SW	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)	TRAY L-LIMIT SW	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)	TRAY U-LIMIT SW	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)	TRAY MIDDLE SW	Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)	PAPER HOLD DOWN SW	Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)	LOAD DET SW	Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)	HP SW	Paper entry sensor (PES)	EJECT SW 1	Eject switch 1 (ESW1)	EJECT SW 2	Eject switch 2 (ESW2)	EJECT SW 3	Eject switch 3 (ESW3)	STAPLE HP SW 1	Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)	STAPLE HP SW 2	Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)	MIDDLE FEED SW1	Inner tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)	MIDDLE FEED SW2	Inner tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)	BUNDLE DET SW 1	Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)	BUNDLE DET SW 2	Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)	BUNDLE UP HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)	BUNDLE DOWN HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)	WIDTH HP SW 1	Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)	WIDTH HP SW 2	Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)
Display	Description																																																												
FINISHER	Checking the switch of the document finisher																																																												
MAIL BOX	Checking the switch of the mailbox																																																												
BOOKLET	Checking the switch of the center-folding unit																																																												
Display	Switches and sensors																																																												
FRONT COVER SW	Front cover switch (FCSW)																																																												
TOP COVER SW	Top cover switch (TCSW)																																																												
RIGHT COVER SW	Sub tray right switch (STRSW)																																																												
SET SW	Joint switch (JSW)																																																												
BOOKLET SW	Centerfold set switch (CSSW)																																																												
PUNCH TANK SW	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)																																																												
TRAY L-LIMIT SW	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)																																																												
TRAY U-LIMIT SW	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)																																																												
TRAY MIDDLE SW	Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)																																																												
PAPER HOLD DOWN SW	Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)																																																												
LOAD DET SW	Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)																																																												
HP SW	Paper entry sensor (PES)																																																												
EJECT SW 1	Eject switch 1 (ESW1)																																																												
EJECT SW 2	Eject switch 2 (ESW2)																																																												
EJECT SW 3	Eject switch 3 (ESW3)																																																												
STAPLE HP SW 1	Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)																																																												
STAPLE HP SW 2	Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)																																																												
MIDDLE FEED SW1	Inner tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)																																																												
MIDDLE FEED SW2	Inner tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)																																																												
BUNDLE DET SW 1	Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)																																																												
BUNDLE DET SW 2	Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)																																																												
BUNDLE UP HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)																																																												
BUNDLE DOWN HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)																																																												
WIDTH HP SW 1	Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)																																																												
WIDTH HP SW 2	Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)																																																												

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U241	Method: [MAIL BOX] 1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.																						
	<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Switches and sensors</th></tr><tr><td>FEED IN SW</td><td>Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)</td></tr><tr><td>EJECT SW</td><td>Tray eject sensor (TEJS)</td></tr><tr><td>COVER SW</td><td>Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)</td></tr><tr><td>OVER FLOW SW 1</td><td>Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)</td></tr><tr><td>OVER FLOW SW 2</td><td>Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)</td></tr><tr><td>OVER FLOW SW 3</td><td>Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)</td></tr><tr><td>OVER FLOW SW 4</td><td>Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)</td></tr><tr><td>OVER FLOW SW 5</td><td>Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)</td></tr><tr><td>OVER FLOW SW 6</td><td>Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)</td></tr><tr><td>OVER FLOW SW 7</td><td>Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)</td></tr></table>	Display	Switches and sensors	FEED IN SW	Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)	EJECT SW	Tray eject sensor (TEJS)	COVER SW	Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)	OVER FLOW SW 1	Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)	OVER FLOW SW 2	Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)	OVER FLOW SW 3	Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)	OVER FLOW SW 4	Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)	OVER FLOW SW 5	Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)	OVER FLOW SW 6	Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)	OVER FLOW SW 7	Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)
	Display	Switches and sensors																					
	FEED IN SW	Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)																					
	EJECT SW	Tray eject sensor (TEJS)																					
	COVER SW	Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)																					
	OVER FLOW SW 1	Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)																					
	OVER FLOW SW 2	Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)																					
	OVER FLOW SW 3	Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)																					
	OVER FLOW SW 4	Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)																					
OVER FLOW SW 5	Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)																						
OVER FLOW SW 6	Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)																						
OVER FLOW SW 7	Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)																						
Method: [BOOKLET] 1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.																							
<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Switches and sensors</th></tr><tr><td>BUNDLE UP HP SW</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)</td></tr><tr><td>BNDL DOWN HP SW</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)</td></tr><tr><td>BLADE HP SW</td><td>Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH HP SW U</td><td>Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH HP SW L</td><td>Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)</td></tr><tr><td>FEED IN SW</td><td>Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER DET SW</td><td>Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)</td></tr><tr><td>TRAY PAP DET SW</td><td>Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)</td></tr><tr><td>EJECT SW</td><td>Centerfold eject switch (CESW)</td></tr><tr><td>TRAY DET SW</td><td>Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)</td></tr></table>	Display	Switches and sensors	BUNDLE UP HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)	BNDL DOWN HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)	BLADE HP SW	Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)	WIDTH HP SW U	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)	WIDTH HP SW L	Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)	FEED IN SW	Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)	PAPER DET SW	Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)	TRAY PAP DET SW	Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)	EJECT SW	Centerfold eject switch (CESW)	TRAY DET SW	Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)	
Display	Switches and sensors																						
BUNDLE UP HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)																						
BNDL DOWN HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)																						
BLADE HP SW	Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)																						
WIDTH HP SW U	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)																						
WIDTH HP SW L	Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)																						
FEED IN SW	Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)																						
PAPER DET SW	Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)																						
TRAY PAP DET SW	Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)																						
EJECT SW	Centerfold eject switch (CESW)																						
TRAY DET SW	Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)																						
Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.																							

Maintenance item No.	Description																												
U246	<p>Setting the paper ejection device</p> <p>Description Provides various settings for the 3000-sheet document finisher, if furnished.</p> <p>Purpose</p> <p>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode Adjust if skewed paper conveying occurs or if the copy paper is Z-folded in punch mode.</p> <p>Adjustment of paper stop timing in the punch mode To adjust this item when the position of a punch hole is different from the specified one.</p> <p>Adjustment of front/rear side registration home position of Inner tray Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the Inner tray adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p>Adjusting of front and back/slanted stapling home position Adjusts the stapling position in the staple mode if the position is not proper. Provides adjustment of slanted stapling.</p> <p>Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position of center-folding unit Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the centerfold adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p>Adjustment of booklet stapling position Adjusts the booklet stapling position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p>Adjustment of center folding position Adjusts the center folding position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key.Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>3000 FINISHER</td><td>Adjustment of 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr><tr><td>BOOKLET FOLDER</td><td>Adjustment of center-folding unit</td></tr></table> <p>Method: [3000 FINISHER]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>PUNCH REG ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</td></tr><tr><td>PUNCH POSITION ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH F HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of front side registration home position</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH R HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of rear side registration home position</td></tr><tr><td>STAPLE HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</td></tr><tr><td>TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: [PUNCH REG ADJ]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of registration stop timing</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>0</td><td>1 ms</td></tr></table> <p>If skewed paper conveying occurs (sample 1), increase the preset value. If the copy paper is Z-folded (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</p> <div><div><p>Sample 1</p></div><div><p>Sample 2</p></div></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. The value is set.	Display	Description	3000 FINISHER	Adjustment of 3000-sheet document finisher	BOOKLET FOLDER	Adjustment of center-folding unit	Display	Description	PUNCH REG ADJ	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode	PUNCH POSITION ADJ	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode	WIDTH F HP ADJ	Adjustment of front side registration home position	WIDTH R HP ADJ	Adjustment of rear side registration home position	STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	1 ms
Display	Description																												
3000 FINISHER	Adjustment of 3000-sheet document finisher																												
BOOKLET FOLDER	Adjustment of center-folding unit																												
Display	Description																												
PUNCH REG ADJ	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode																												
PUNCH POSITION ADJ	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode																												
WIDTH F HP ADJ	Adjustment of front side registration home position																												
WIDTH R HP ADJ	Adjustment of rear side registration home position																												
STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position																												
TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position																												
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	1 ms																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																												
U246	<p>Setting: [PUNCH POSITION ADJ]</p> <p>1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.487 mm</td></tr></table> <p>If the distance of the position of a punch hole is smaller than the specified value A, increase the preset value. If the distance is larger than the value A, decrease the preset value.</p> <div><p>Preset value A: 5.5 ± 2 mm (inch) 9.5 ± 2 mm (metric)</p></div> <p>Figure 1-3-2</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Setting: [WIDTH F HP ADJ/WIDTH R HP ADJ]</p> <p>1. Select [WIDTH F HP ADJ] or [WIDTH R HP ADJ].</p> <p>2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of front side registration home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.314 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of rear side registration home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.314 mm</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select FINISHER MOTOR, then WID A3 TEST. The width guides of the Inner tray will move to A3-size position.</p> <p>6. Pull the Inner tray, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is about the guides.</p> <p>7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.</p> <p>Setting: [STAPLE HP ADJ]</p> <p>1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.32 mm</td></tr></table> <p>When staple positions are off toward the front side of the machine (sample 1), increase the preset value. When staple positions are off toward the rear side of the machine (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</p> <div><div><p>Sample 1</p></div><div><p>Sample 2</p></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-3</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.487 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of front side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm	Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.32 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.487 mm																										
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of front side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm																										
Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm																										
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.32 mm																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																																						
U246	<p>Setting: [TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ]</p> <p>1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.99°</td></tr></table> <p>To increase the angle for slanted stapling (sample 1), decrease the preset value. To decrease the angle for slanted stapling (sample 2), increase the preset value.</p> <div></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-4</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Method: [BOOKLET FOLDER]</p> <p>1. Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>WIDTH U HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of upper side registration home position</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH L HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of lower side registration home position</td></tr><tr><td>STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size</td></tr><tr><td>STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size</td></tr><tr><td>STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size</td></tr><tr><td>SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size</td></tr><tr><td>SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size</td></tr><tr><td>SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: [WIDTH U HP ADJ/WIDTH L HP ADJ]</p> <p>1. Select [WIDTH U HP ADJ] or [WIDTH L HP ADJ].</p> <p>2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of upper side registration home position</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>0</td><td>0.104 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of lower side registration home position</td><td>-46 to 46</td><td>0</td><td>0.104 mm</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [BOOKLET], then [WID A3 TEST]. The width guides of the center-folding unit will move to A3-size position.</p> <p>6. Pull the center-folding unit, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is abut the guides.</p> <p>7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.99°	Display	Description	WIDTH U HP ADJ	Adjustment of upper side registration home position	WIDTH L HP ADJ	Adjustment of lower side registration home position	STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size	STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size	STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size	SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size	SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size	SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-20 to 20	0	0.104 mm	Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-46 to 46	0	0.104 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																				
Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.99°																																				
Display	Description																																						
WIDTH U HP ADJ	Adjustment of upper side registration home position																																						
WIDTH L HP ADJ	Adjustment of lower side registration home position																																						
STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size																																						
STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size																																						
STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size																																						
SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size																																						
SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size																																						
SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size																																						
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																				
Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-20 to 20	0	0.104 mm																																				
Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-46 to 46	0	0.104 mm																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U246	<p>Setting: [STAPLE POS ADJ]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)], [STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)] or [STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)].2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr></table> <p>When staples are placed too far right (sample 1), decrease the preset value. When staples are placed too far left (sample 2), increase the preset value. Reference value: within ± 2 mm</p> <div></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Sample 1 Sample 2</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-5</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Setting: [SADDLE POS ADJ]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)], [SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)] or [SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)].2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr></table> <p>When the centerfold position too far right (sample 1), increase the preset value. When the centerfold position too far left (sample 2), decrease the setting value. Reference value: within ± 3 mm</p> <div></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Center line Sample 1 Sample 2</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-6</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																														
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																														
Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														

Maintenance item No.	Description									
U902	<p>Checking/clearing finisher punch count</p> <p>Description Sets the punch limit and displays and clears the punch-hole scrap count when 3000-sheet document finisher is installed.</p> <p>Purpose Sets the punch limit to notify the user of the time to collect punch-hole scrap. Also, used to manually clear the punch-hole scrap count if a message requiring collection of punch-hole scrap is shown on the touch panel after collection. If punch-hole scrap is collected with the machine power turned off, the punch-hole scrap count is not cleared and consequently this problem occurs.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item.3. Change the value using the numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>PUNCH LIMIT (*1000)</td><td>Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 9999000</td></tr><tr><td>PUNCH COUNT</td><td>Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 9999999</td></tr></table> <p>The punch limit can be set in increments of 1000.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Enter 0 using the numeric keys.2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	PUNCH LIMIT (*1000)	Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 9999000	PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 9999999
Display	Description	Setting range								
PUNCH LIMIT (*1000)	Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 9999000								
PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 9999999								

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U905	<p>Checking counts by optional devices</p> <p>Description Displays the counts of DP or finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To check the use of DP and finisher.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the device, the count of which is to be checked. 3. Press the start key. The count of the selected device is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DP</td><td>Counts of DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td><td>Counts of document finisher or 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>DP</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADP</td><td>No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>RADP</td><td>No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONCURRENT</td><td>No. of dual scan originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Document finisher</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CP CNT</td><td>No. of copies that has passed</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE</td><td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>3000-sheet document finisher</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CP CNT</td><td>No. of copies that has passed</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE</td><td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH</td><td>Frequency the punch has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>STACK</td><td>Frequency the stacker has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE</td><td>Frequency the center holding has been activated</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	DP	Counts of DP	FINISHER	Counts of document finisher or 3000-sheet document finisher	Display	Description	ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP	RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP	CONCURRENT	No. of dual scan originals that has passed through the DP	Display	Description	CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed	STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated	Display	Description	CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed	STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated	PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated	STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated	SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated
Display	Description																																
DP	Counts of DP																																
FINISHER	Counts of document finisher or 3000-sheet document finisher																																
Display	Description																																
ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP																																
RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP																																
CONCURRENT	No. of dual scan originals that has passed through the DP																																
Display	Description																																
CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed																																
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated																																
Display	Description																																
CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed																																
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated																																
PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated																																
STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated																																
SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated																																

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops copying and displays the jam location on the operation panel.

Paper misfeed counts sorted by the detection condition can be checked in maintenance item U903.

To remove paper jammed, open the front cover or top cover.

Paper misfeed detection can be reset by opening and closing the respective covers to turn safety switch off and on.

(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

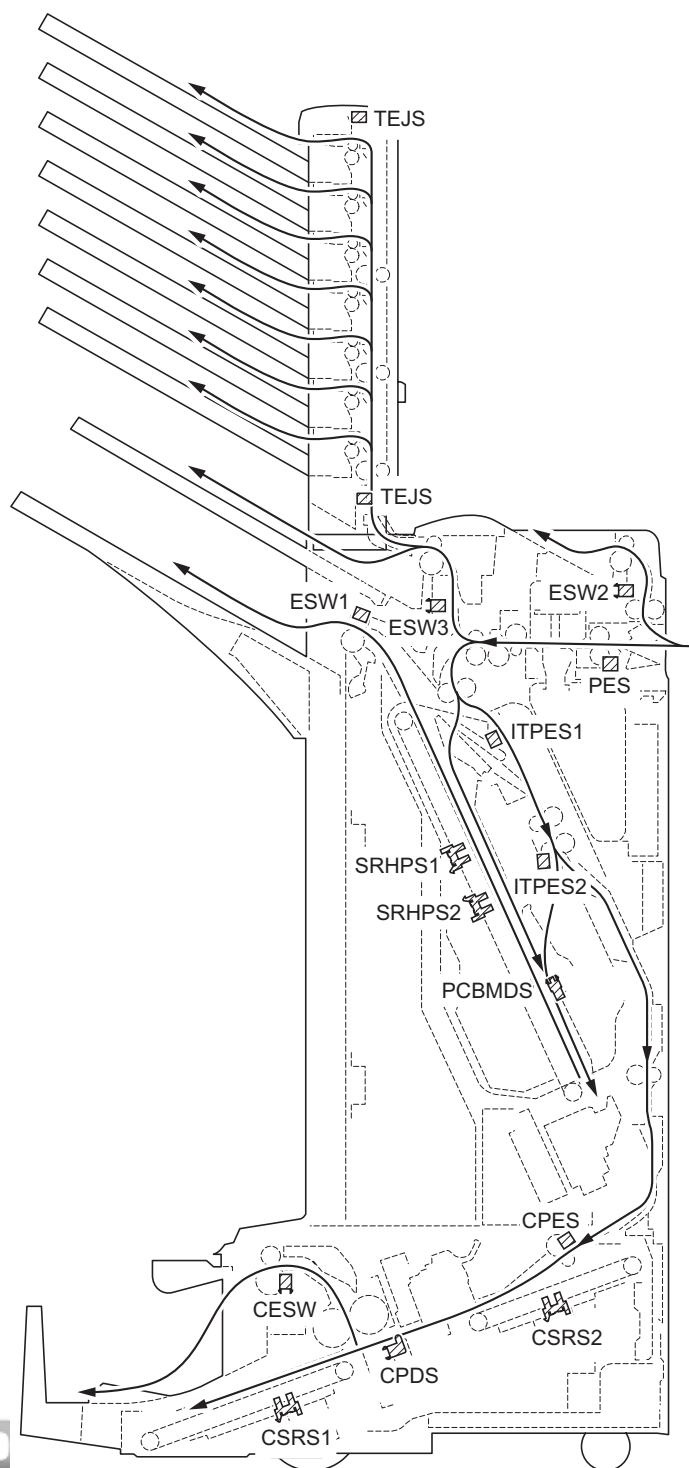


Figure 1-4-1

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Finisher	80 Jam between the finisher and machine	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	15 s	15 s	15 s
		The paper entry sensor (PES) turns on before the eject signal is output from the machine.	-	-	-
	81 Paper entry sensor non arrival jam	The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1613 ms	1152 ms	968 ms
		The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1613 ms	1152 ms	968 ms
		The paper entry sensor (PES) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	3547 ms	2533 ms	2128 ms
	82 Jam in stapler	The home position is not detected within the specified time when driving the staple motor.	600 ms	600 ms	600 ms
	83 Eject sensor stay jam	Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1404 ms	1404 ms	1404 ms
	84 Jam in eject section of right sub tray	Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1853 ms	1324 ms	1112 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1853 ms	1324 ms	1112 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	3547 ms	2533 ms	2128 ms
	85 Jam in eject section of left sub tray	Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	2187 ms	1562 ms	1312 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	2187 ms	1562 ms	1312 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	3547 ms	2533 ms	2128 ms
	87 Jam in eject section of inner tray 2	Inner tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn on within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	3447 ms	2462 ms	2068 ms
		Inner tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn off within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning off.	1371 ms	1371 ms	1371 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Finisher	88 Jam in eject section of main tray	Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned on within specified time.	1324 ms	1324 ms	1324 ms
		At the time of bundle up initial operation, paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1) does not turn on.	-	-	-
		At the time of bundle down initial operation, paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2) does not turn on.	-	-	-
		At the time of side registration standby operation, side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1) does not turn off within specified time.	500 ms	500 ms	500 ms
		At the time of side registration standby operation, side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2) does not turn off within specified time.	500 ms	500 ms	500 ms
	89 Jam in center-folding unit	The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn off within specified time of centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) turning on.	5373 ms	3838 ms	3224 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn on within specified time of centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) turning on.	5373 ms	3838 ms	3224 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms	2313 ms	2313 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned on within specified time.	4080 ms	4080 ms	4080 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	8200 ms	8200 ms	8200 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms	600 ms	600 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms	600 ms	600 ms
		The home position is not detected within the specified time after driving the centerfold staple motor (CSTM).	1000 ms	1000 ms	1000 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned off within specified time.	1370 ms	1370 ms	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned on within specified time.	1370 ms	1370 ms	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms	2313 ms	2313 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Finisher	90 Jam in mailbox	The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 1).	5120 ms	3657 ms	3072 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 2).	4633 ms	3310 ms	2780 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 3).	4147 ms	2962 ms	2488 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 4).	3660 ms	2614 ms	2196 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 5).	3173 ms	2267 ms	1904 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 6).	2687 ms	1919 ms	1612 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 7).	2200 ms	1571 ms	1320 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	Depends on paper size	Depends on paper size	Depends on paper size
	91 Finisher cover open	The front cover, top cover or right sub tray is opened when starting the finisher operation. The centerfold unit top cover is opened when starting the centerfold operation. The mailbox cover is opened when starting the operation.	-	-	-

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in document finisher is indicated during copying (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 80	Defective paper entry sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(2) A paper jam in document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher). Jam code 81	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(3) A paper jam in document finisher is indicated during copying (finisher stapler jam). Jam code 82	Defective staple home position sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the staple home position sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(4) A paper jam in document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor stay jam). Jam code 83	Defective eject switch 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(5) A paper jam in document finisher is indicated during copying (right sub tray eject jam). Jam code 84	Defective eject switch 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(6) A paper jam in document finisher is indicated during copying (left sub tray eject jam). Jam code 85	Defective eject switch 3.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(7) A paper jam in document finisher is indicated during copying (inner tray paper entry sensor 2 jam). Jam code 87	Defective inner tray paper entry sensor 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn inner tray paper entry sensor 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(8) A paper jam in document finisher is indicated during copying (main tray eject jam). Jam code 88	Defective eject switch 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
<p>(9) A paper jam in document finisher is indicated during copying (center-folding unit jam). Jam code 89</p>	<p>Defective sensor/switch.</p>	<p>Run maintenance item U241 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Centerfold paper entry sensor, centerfold eject switch, centerfold paper conveying sensor</p>
<p>(10) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (mailbox jam). Jam code 90</p>	<p>Defective tray eject sensor.</p>	<p>Run maintenance item U241 and turn tray eject sensor on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.</p>

1-4-2 Self-diagnosis

(1) Self-diagnostic function

When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of C followed by a number, indicating the nature of the problem.

A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning cover switch off and back on.

(2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8020	Punch motor problem The error signal of the punch motor is detected for more than 500 ms while the punch motor is operating.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch motor.	Replace the punch motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the punch PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8050	Paper conveying belt motor 1 problem Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn on within 2.5 s. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the inner tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8060	Paper conveying belt motor 2 problem Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn on within 1.5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the inner tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8070	Inner tray communication error Communication with the inner tray is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 and YC24 on the finisher main PWB and the connector YC1 and YC4 on the inner tray PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8140	Main tray problem The main tray is not detected by the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor within 20 s since the tray has started ascending. The main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor is not detected to be turned off in 20 s after the main tray has descended. The main tray low limit detection sensor is not detected to be turned on in 20 s after the main tray has descended. During main tray ascent, the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor stays on for more than 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the main tray motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main tray motor.	Replace the main tray motor.
		Defective main tray upper limit detection sensor/main tray paper upper surface detection sensor/main tray lower limit detection sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8170	Side registration motor 1 problem When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the inner tray PWB and the connector on side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 1.	Replace side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8180	Side registration motor 2 problem When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the inner tray PWB and the connector of side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 2.	Replace side registration motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8210	Stapler moving motor 1 error When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler moving motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler moving motor 1.	Replace stapler moving motor 1.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8220	Stapler moving motor 2 error When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of staple relay PWB and stapler moving motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler moving motor 2.	Replace stapler moving motor 2.
		Defective staple relay PWB.	Replace the staple relay PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8230	Stapler motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Jam 82 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of staple relay PWB and stapler motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler motor.	Replace the stapler motor.
		Defective staple relay PWB.	Replace the staple relay PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8300	Center-folding unit communication error (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Communication with the center-folding unit is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 and YC20 on the finisher main PWB and the connector YC1 and YC2 on the centerfold main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective center-fold set switch.	Replace the centerfold set switch.
		Defective center-fold main PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8310	Centerfold side registration motor 2 problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 2.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8320	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor problem The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 2.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6, YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.	Replace centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8330	Blade motor problem The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the blade motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective blade motor.	Replace the blade motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8340	Centerfold staple motor problem Jam 89 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold staple motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold staple motor.	Replace the centerfold staple motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8350	Centerfold side registration motor 1 problem The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 1.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8360	Centerfold main motor problem The motor lock signal is detected above 1 s during driving the centerfold main motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC12 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold main motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold main motor.	Replace the centerfold main motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8500	Mailbox communication error Communication with the mailbox is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of the connector of the mailbox and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8510	Mailbox drive motor problem The motor lock signal is detected above 500 ms during driving the mailbox drive motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the mailbox main PWB and the connector of the mailbox drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox drive motor.	Replace the mailbox drive motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8800	Document finisher communication error A communication error from document finisher is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C8900	Backup memory data problem Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the finisher main PWB and the connector of the machine, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		EEPROM installed incorrectly.	Install EEPROM correctly.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8910	Backup memory data problem Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the connector YC4 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch PWB.	Replace the punch PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8930	Backup memory data problem Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the centerfold main PWB and the connector YC5 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		EEPROM installed incorrectly.	Install EEPROM correctly.
		Defective centerfold main PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB and check for correct operation.

1-4-3 Electric problems

Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Finisher

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The paper conveying motor, paper entry motor, eject motor, main tray motor, staple moving motor 1/2 or staple motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
	3. Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the each motor operates. If not, replace the motor.
	4. Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the each motor operates. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(2) The relief path motor, paper conveying belt motor 1/2 or side registration motor 1/2 does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
	3. Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the each motor operates. If not, replace the motor.
	4. Defective Inner tray PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the each motor operates. If not, replace the Inner tray PWB.
(3) The paper entry solenoid, feedshift solenoid 1/2, pressure switching solenoid or paper holder solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the each solenoid operates. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(4) The paddle solenoid, trailing edge holder solenoid 1/2, lock solenoid, relief path solenoid, centerfold feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective Inner tray PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the each solenoid operates. If not, replace the Inner tray PWB.

Center-folding unit (option)

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The centerfold main motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
	3. Defective centerfold main motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the centerfold main motor operates when YC12-3 on the centerfold main PWB goes low. If not, replace the centerfold main motor.
	4. Defective centerfold main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC12-3 on the centerfold main PWB goes low. If not, replace the centerfold main PWB.
(2) The blade motor, centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2, centerfold side registration motor 1/2 or centerfold staple motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
	3. Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the each motor operates. If not, replace the motor.
	4. Defective centerfold main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the each motor operates. If not, replace the centerfold main PWB.

Mailbox (option)

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The mailbox drive motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
	3. Defective mailbox drive motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the mailbox drive motor operates. If not, replace the mailbox drive motor.
	4. Defective mailbox main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the mailbox drive motor operates. If not, replace the mailbox main PWB.

Punch unit (option)

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The punch motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
	3. Defective punch motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the punch motor operates when YC1-3 or YC1-4 on the punch PWB goes low. If not, replace the punch motor.
	4. Defective punch PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC1-3 or YC1-4 on the punch PWB goes low. If not, replace the punch PWB.
	5. Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC4-3 or YC4-4 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(2) The punch pattern solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the punch pattern solenoid operates. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.

1-4-4 Mechanical problems**Finisher**

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) Paper jams.	Check if the contact between the upper and lower paper entry rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the right sub tray eject roller 1/2 and eject pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the left sub tray eject roller and eject pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the paper conveying roller and paper conveying pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the inner tray paper entry roller and paper conveying pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the inner tray paper conveying roller 1/2 and paper conveying pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the eject roller and eject pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.

Center-folding unit (option)

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) Paper jams.	Check if the contact between the centerfold paper entry roller and paper conveying pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the centerfold eject roller and eject pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.

Mailbox (option)

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) Paper jams.	Check if the contact between the paper conveying roller and paper conveying pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the eject roller and eject pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the Power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet. Turning off the main power switch before pressing the Power key to off may cause damage to the equipped hard disk.

When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands. The PWBs are susceptible to static charge.

Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.

When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.

Take care not to get the cables caught.

To reassemble the parts, use the original screws. If the types and the sizes of screws are not known, refer to the PARTS LIST.

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.

Output: 587 VA max.

Please use the item below Interconnecting Cable/

P/N: 303LT46210

1-5-2 Assembly and Disassembly

(1) Correcting paper curling

Follow the below procedure if paper ejected from the finisher is curled.

Procedure

1. Set the machine to the non-sort mode and run paper through the machine to make a test copy.
2. Check if the paper that is ejected from the finisher is curled. If it is, make the following adjustment.

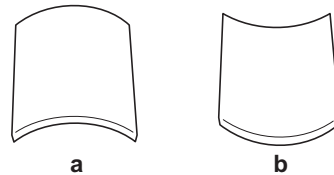


Figure 1-5-1

Paper curled downward (a in figure 1-5-1)

1. Open the front cover
2. Set pressure roller upper adjust knob to 1.

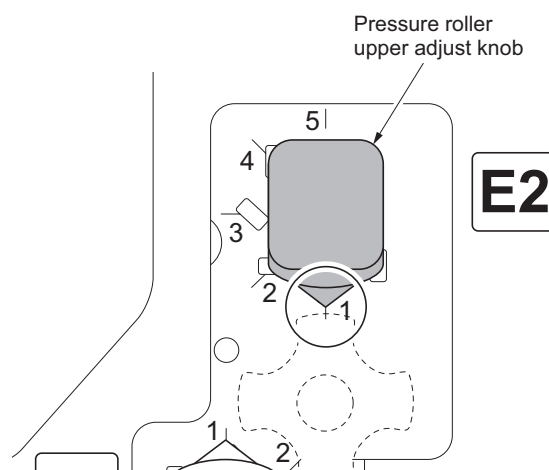


Figure 1-5-2

3. Rotate the pressure roller lower adjust knob by one mark in the direction of the higher numbers.
There are five marks.
4. Close the front cover.
5. Run paper through the machine and check if it is still curled downward.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 until the ejected paper does not curl downward anymore.

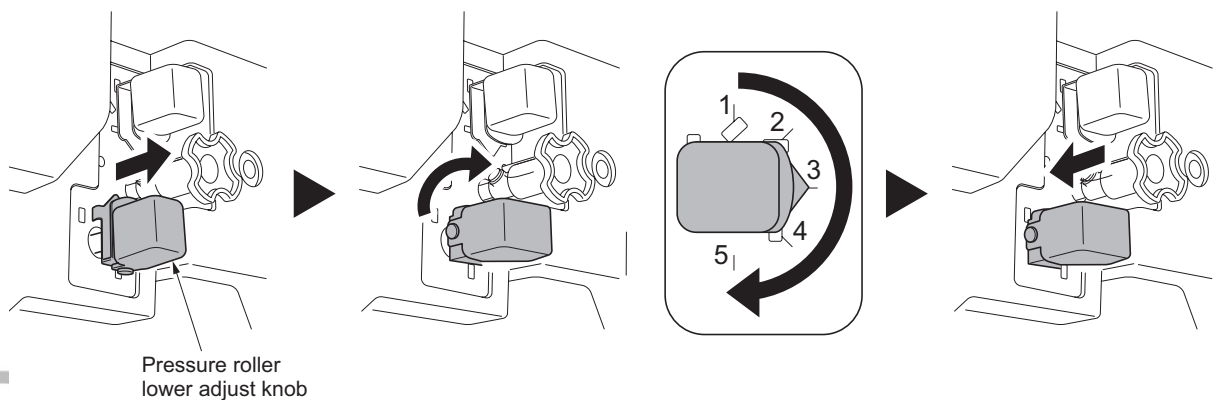
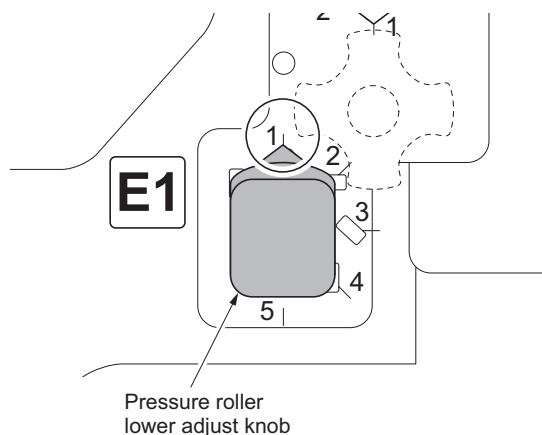


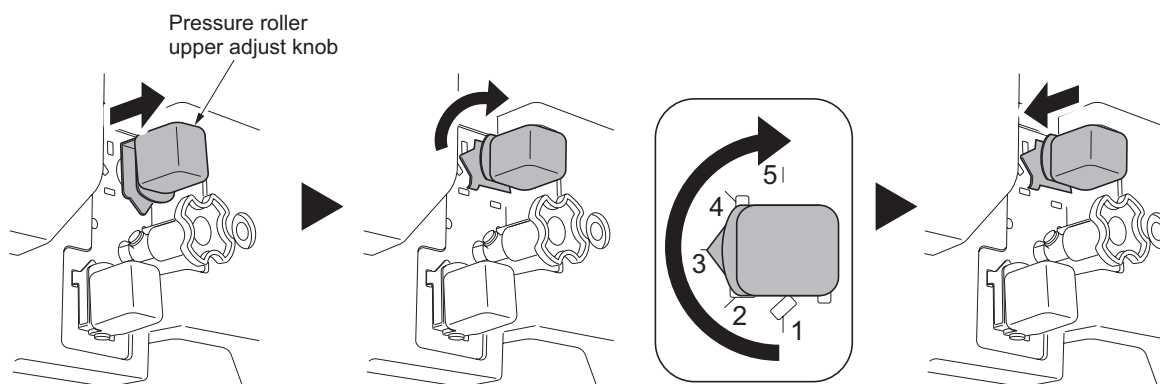
Figure 1-5-3

Paper curled upward (b in figure 1-5-1)

1. Open the front cover
2. Set pressure roller lower adjust knob to 1.

**Figure 1-5-4**

3. Rotate the pressure roller upper adjust knob by one mark in the direction of the higher numbers.
There are five marks.
4. Close the front cover.
5. Run paper through the machine and check if it is still curled upward.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 until the ejected paper does not curl upward anymore.

**Figure 1-5-5**

(2) Centering punch-holes

Follow the below procedure if the positioning of punch holes are off the centerline of paper when the machine is in the punch mode.

Caution:

Before making the following adjustment, ensure that the center position of each cassette in the machine is correct.

Procedure

1. Open the top cover and right sub tray.
2. Remove four screws and hold pressing the finisher release lever to remove the upper cover.

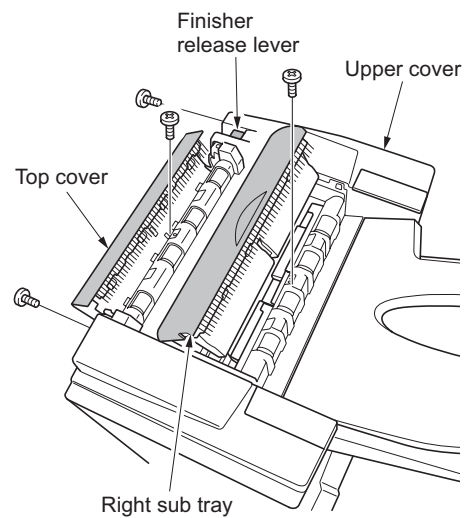


Figure 1-5-6

3. Loosen the two screws of the punch unit.
4. Adjust the position of the punch unit.
When punch holes are off toward the front side of the machine (sample 1), slide the punch unit toward the rear side of the machine (to the direction of black arrow).
When punch holes are off toward the rear side of the machine (sample 2), slide the punch unit toward the front side of the machine (to the direction of white arrow).

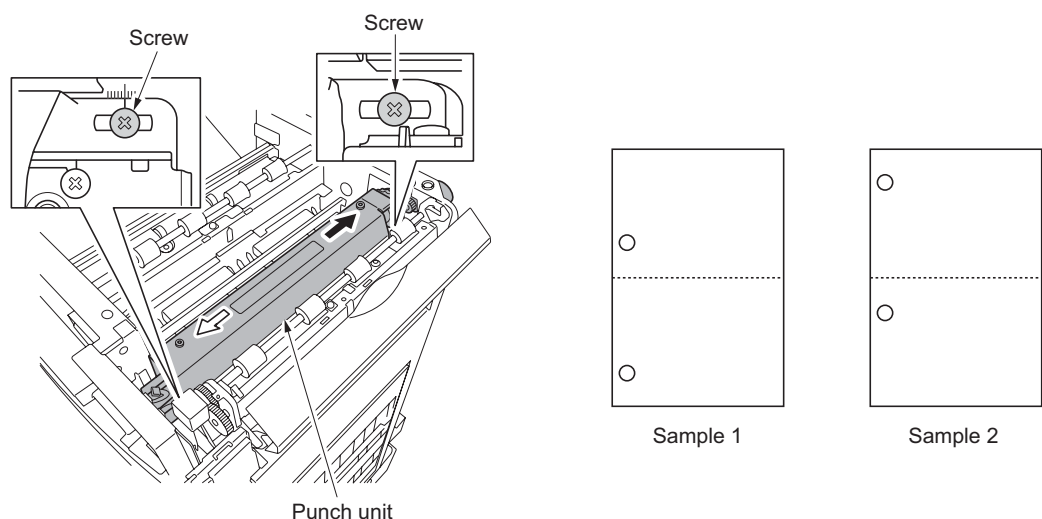
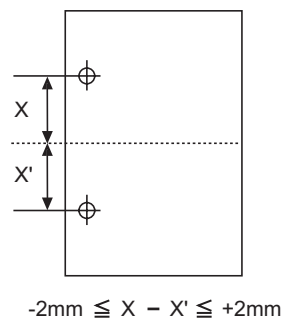


Figure 1-5-7

5. Tighten the two screws in the punch unit and refit the upper cover.
6. Perform a test copy.
Repeat steps 1 to 6 until the vertical gap of the punch holes on the copy sample are within the reference value.
Reference value: ± 2 mm

**Figure 1-5-8**

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-6-1 Remarks on finisher main PWB replacement

When replacing the finisher main PWB, remove the EEPROM (U4) from the finisher main PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new finisher main PWB.

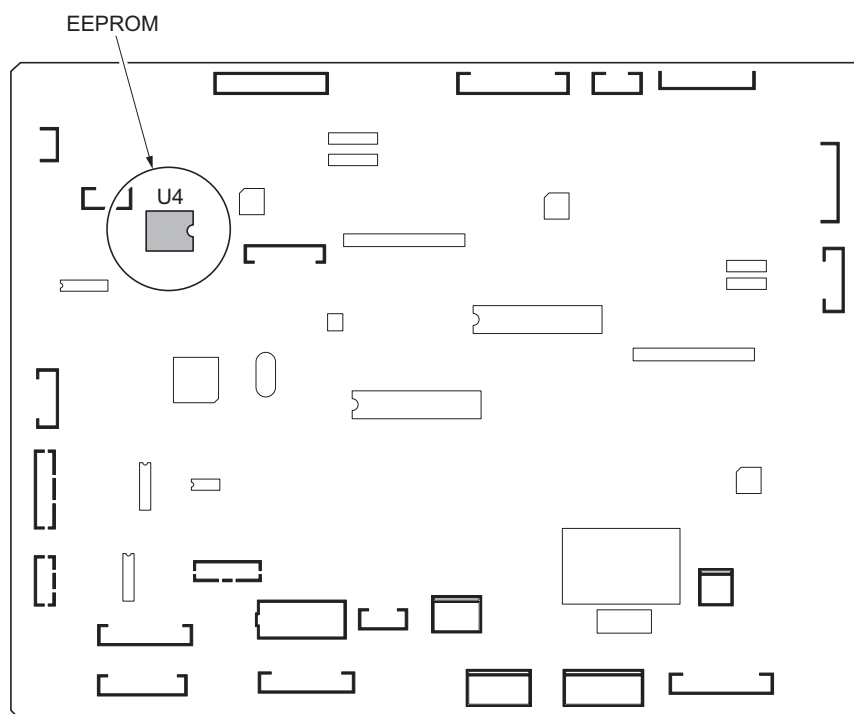


Figure 1-6-1 Finisher main PWB

1-6-2 Remarks on centerfold main PWB replacement

When replacing the centerfold main PWB, remove the EEPROM (U2) from the centerfold main PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new centerfold main PWB.

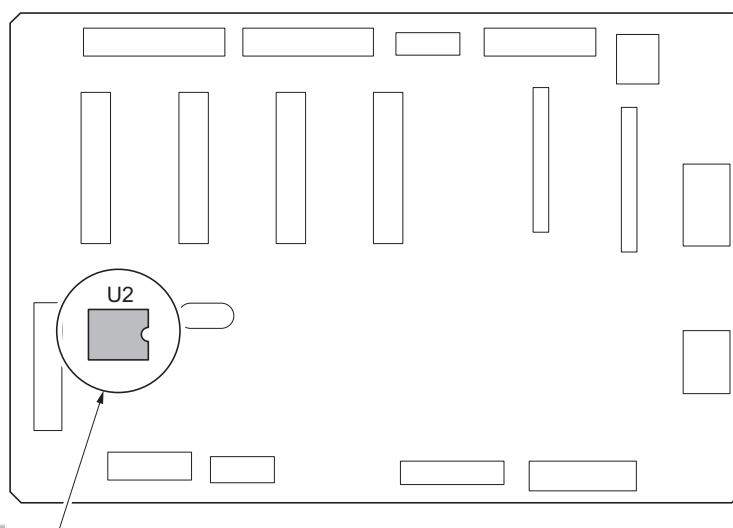


Figure 1-6-2 Centerfold main PWB

This page is intentionally left blank.

2-1-1 Paper insertion and right sub tray eject sections

The paper insertion section inserts paper from the machine into the finisher and then conveys it to the feedshift section. In addition, the paper insertion section switches the paper path to operate feedshift guide 1 and ejects paper to the right sub tray.

Pressure rollers A and B correct upward paper curling and pressure rollers C and D correct downward paper curling.

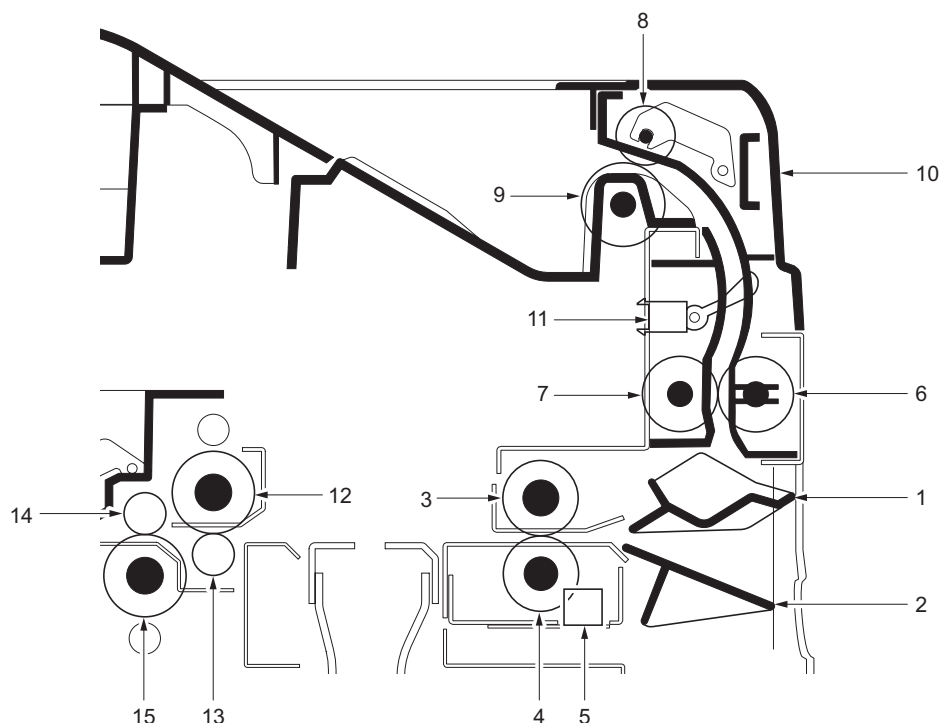


Figure 2-1-1 Paper insertion and right sub tray eject sections

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (1) Feedshift guide 1 | (9) Right sub tray eject roller |
| (2) Paper entry guide | (10) Top cover |
| (3) Upper paper entry roller | (11) Eject switch 2 (ESW2) |
| (4) Lower paper entry roller | (12) Pressure roller A |
| (5) Paper entry sensor (PES) | (13) Pressure roller B |
| (6) Feed pulley | (14) Pressure roller C |
| (7) Right sub tray feed roller | (15) Pressure roller D |
| (8) Eject pulley | |

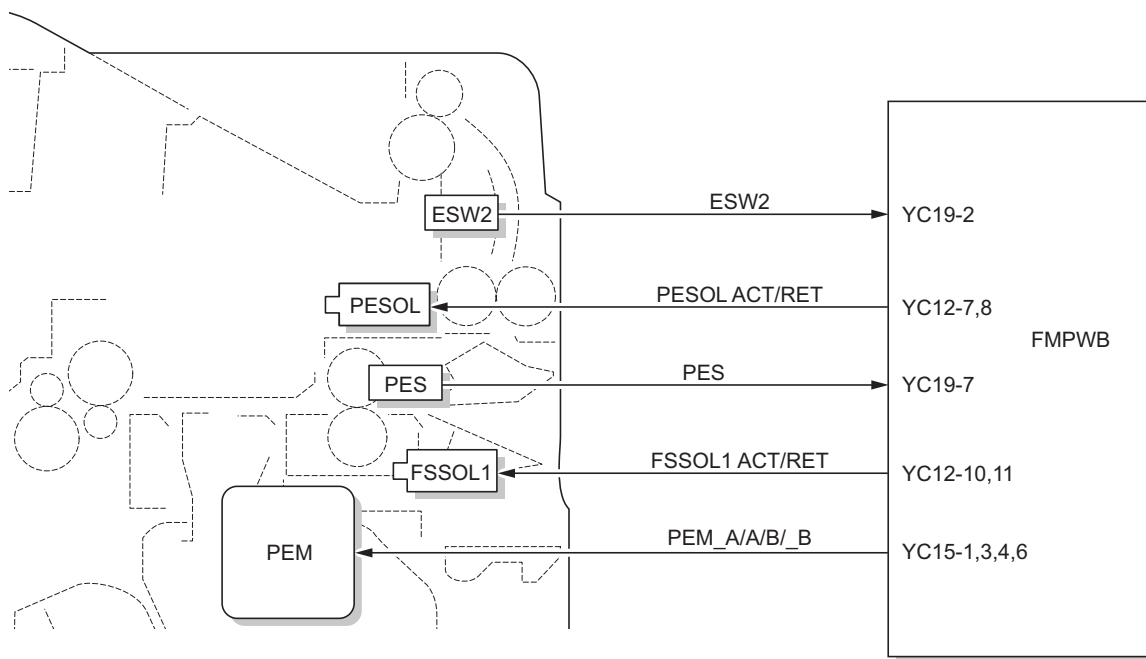


Figure 2-1-2 Paper insertion and right sub tray eject sections block diagram

(1) Eject operation to the right sub tray

Feedshift guide 1 operates by feedshift solenoid 1, switches the paper path carried to the finisher, and ejects paper to the right sub tray. In addition, eject switch 2 detects paper jam when ejecting to the right sub tray.

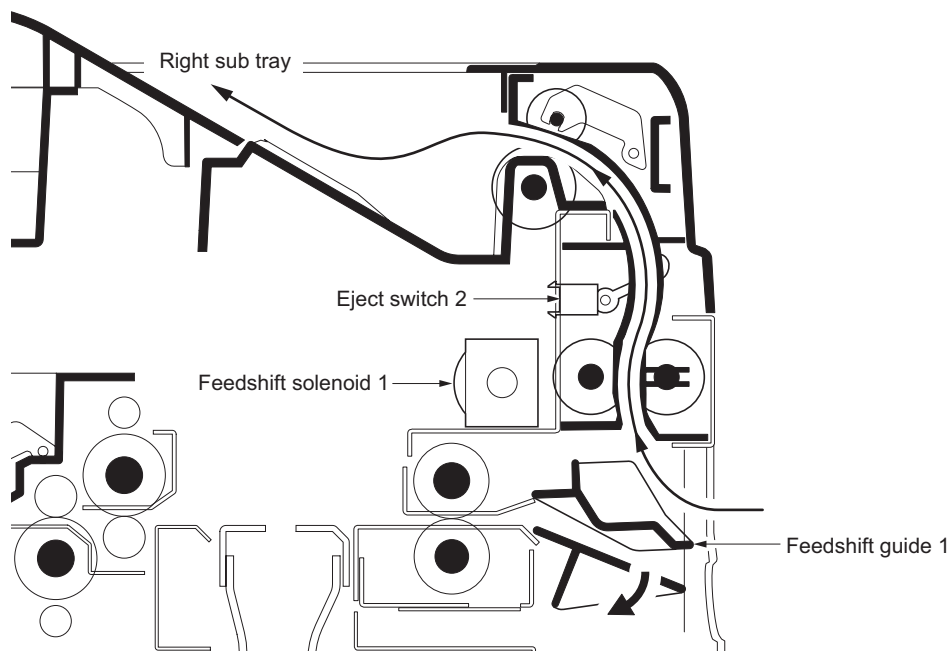


Figure 2-1-3

2-1-2 Feedshift and left sub tray eject sections

The feedshift section switches the paper conveying path to operate feedshift guide 2 to the inner tray section or left sub tray.

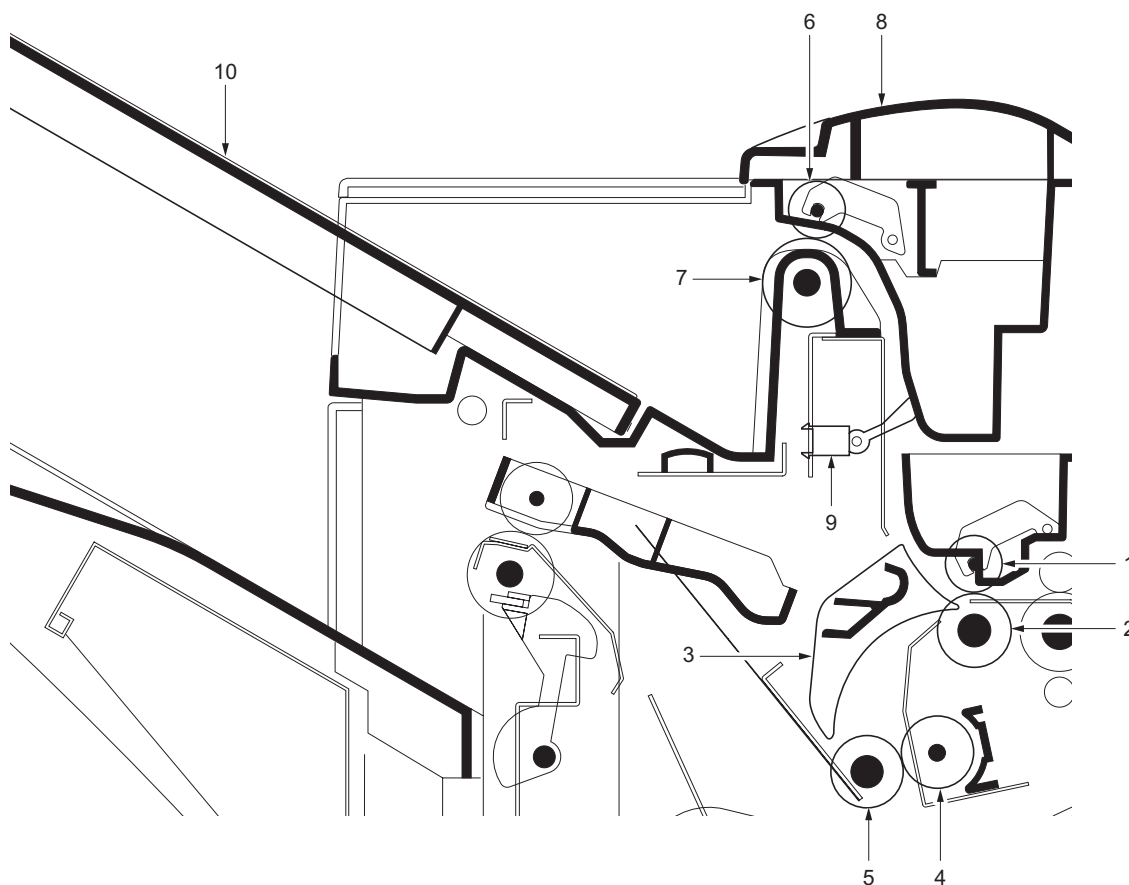


Figure 2-1-4 Feedshift and left sub tray eject sections

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (1) Paper conveying pulley | (6) Eject pulley |
| (2) Paper conveying roller | (7) Left sub tray eject roller |
| (3) Feedshift guide 2 | (8) Right sub tray cover |
| (4) Paper conveying pulley | (9) Eject switch 3 (ESW3) |
| (5) Inner tray paper entry roller | (10) Left sub tray |

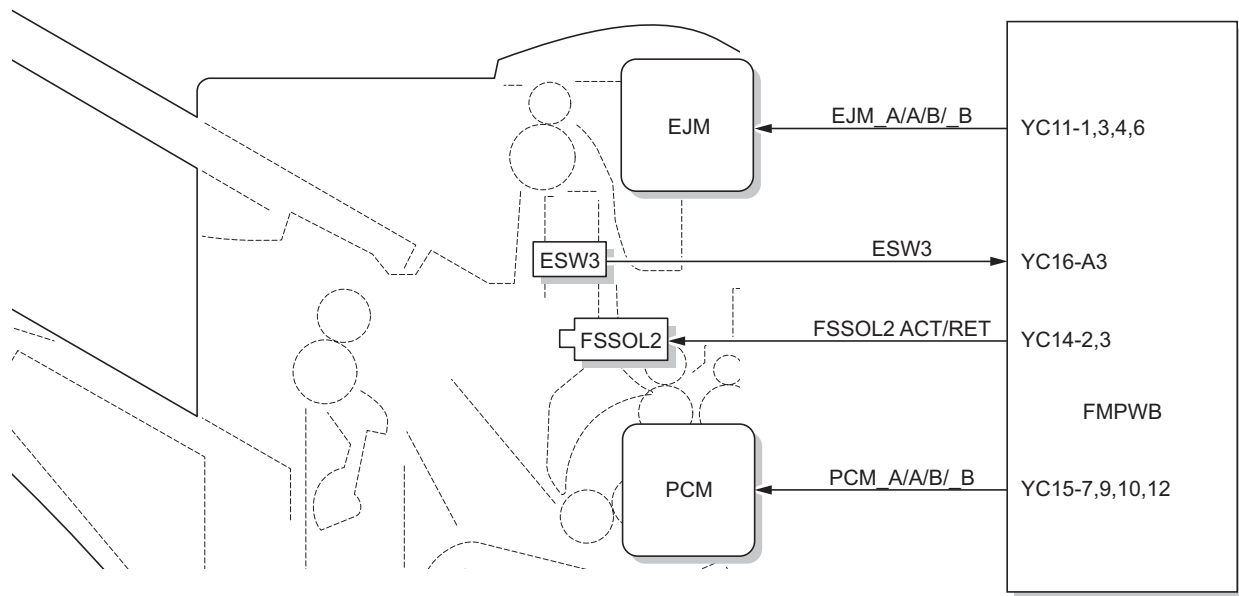


Figure 2-1-5 Feedshift and left sub tray eject sections block diagram

(1) Feedshift operation to left sub tray or inner tray

Feedshift guide 2 operates by feedshift solenoid 2, switches the paper path carried to the feedshift section, and conveys paper to the left sub tray or inner tray. In addition, eject switch 3 detects paper jam when ejecting to the left sub tray.

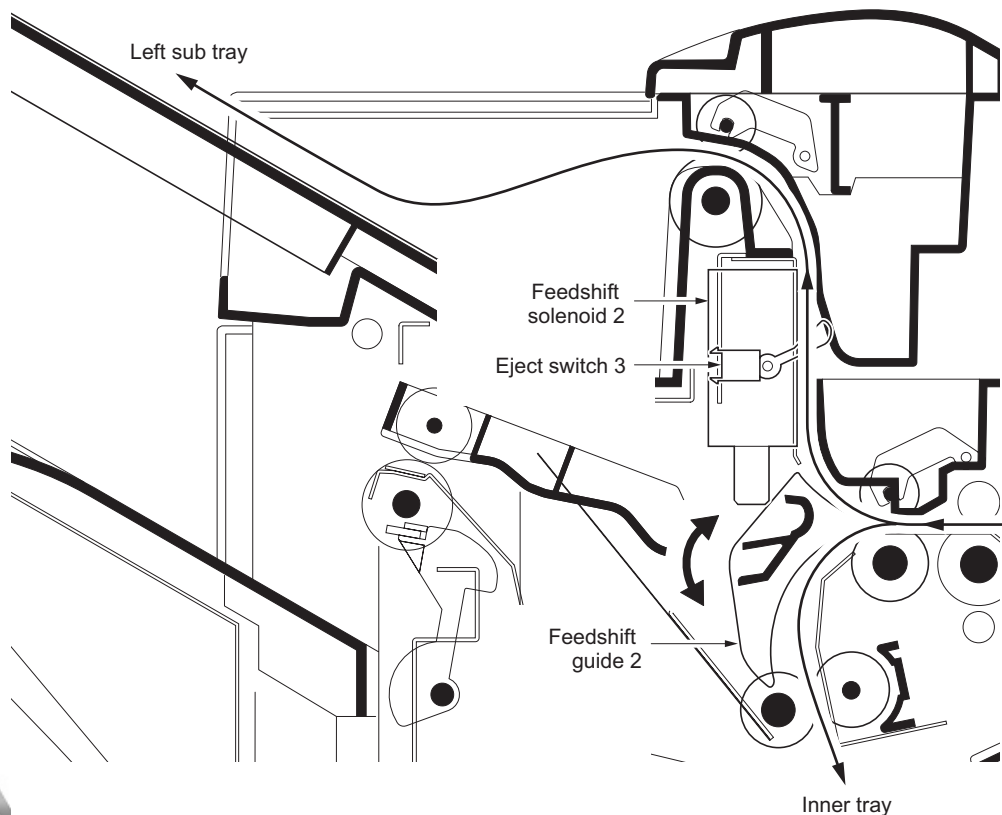


Figure 2-1-6

2-1-3 Inner tray section

The inner tray section performs side identifying and eject position shifting of paper that is stacked in the tray. It then conveys paper to the main tray.

In addition, the inner tray section switches the paper path with the operation of relief path guide and centerfold feedshift guide and conveys paper to optional center-folding unit when centerfolding the paper.

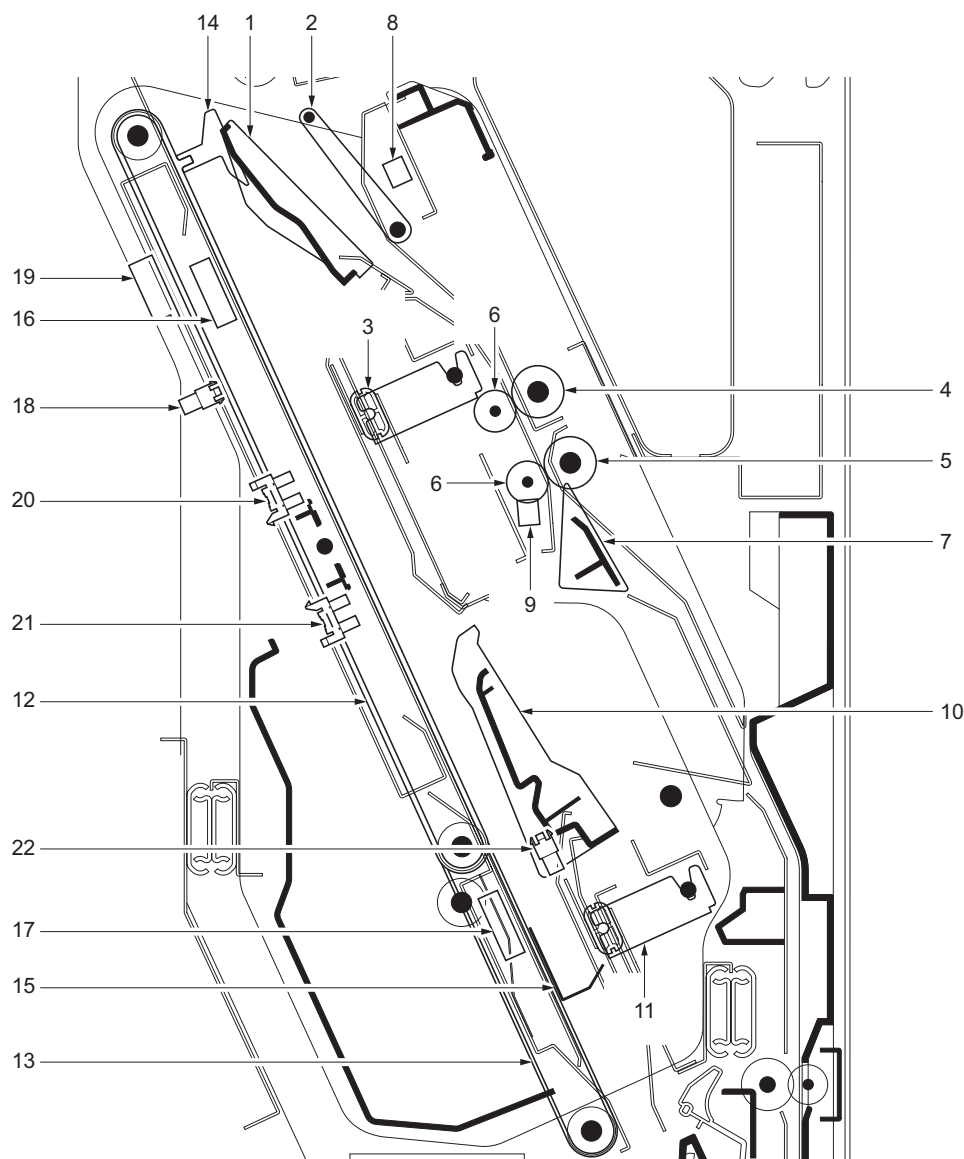


Figure 2-1-7 Inner tray section

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) Trailing edge holder guide 1 | (15) Inner tray lower sliding plate |
| (2) Relief path guide | (16) Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1) |
| (3) Upper forwarding roller | (17) Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2) |
| (4) Inner tray paper conveying roller 1 | (18) Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1) |
| (5) Inner tray paper conveying roller 2 | (19) Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2) |
| (6) Paper conveying pulley | (20) Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1) |
| (7) Centerfold feedshift guide | (21) Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2) |
| (8) Inner tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1) | (22) Paper conveying belt position detection sensor (PCBDS) |
| (9) Inner tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) | |
| (10) Trailing edge holder guide 2 | |
| (11) Lower forwarding roller | |
| (12) Upper paper conveying belt | |
| (13) Lower paper conveying belt | |
| (14) Inner tray upper sliding plate | |

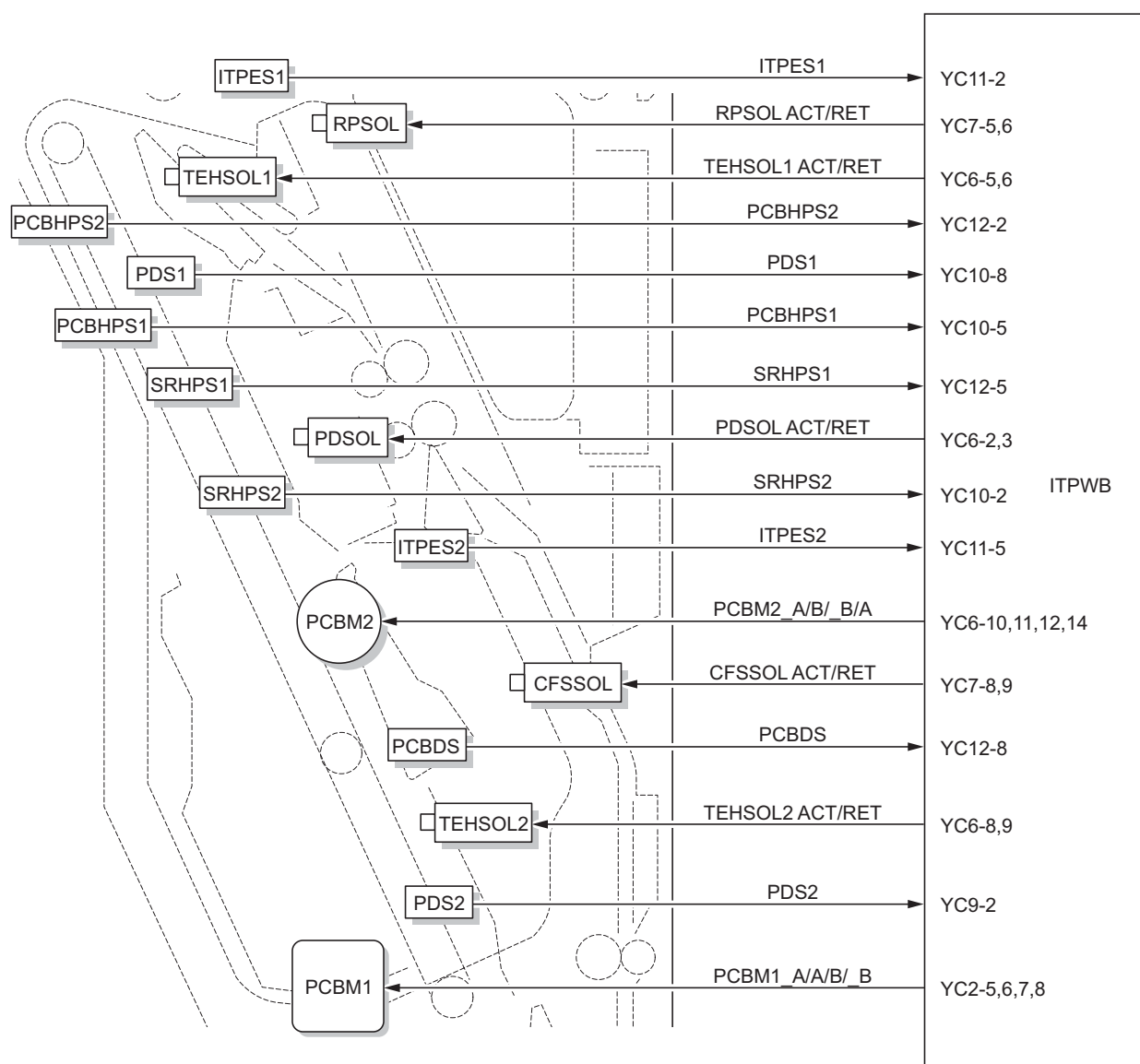
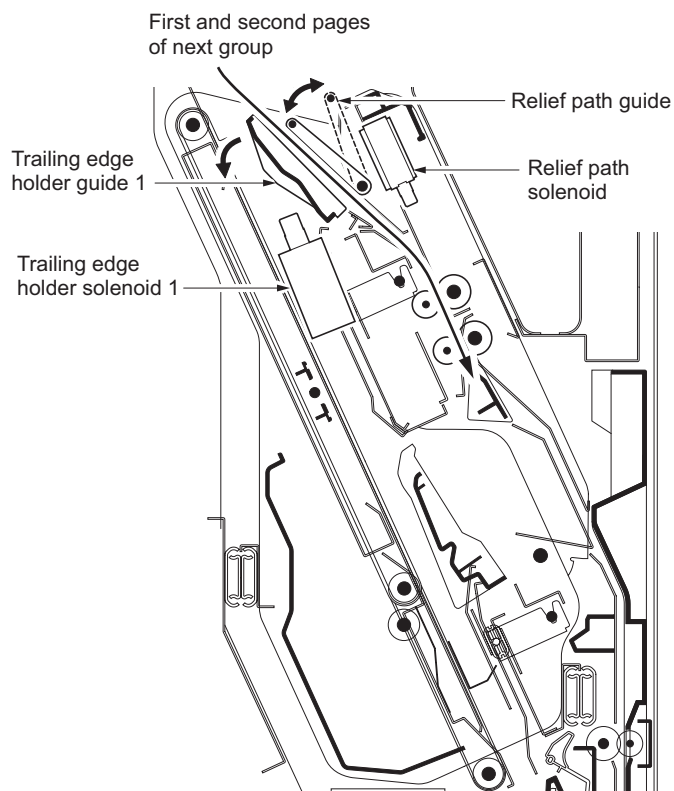


Figure 2-1-8 Inner tray section block diagram

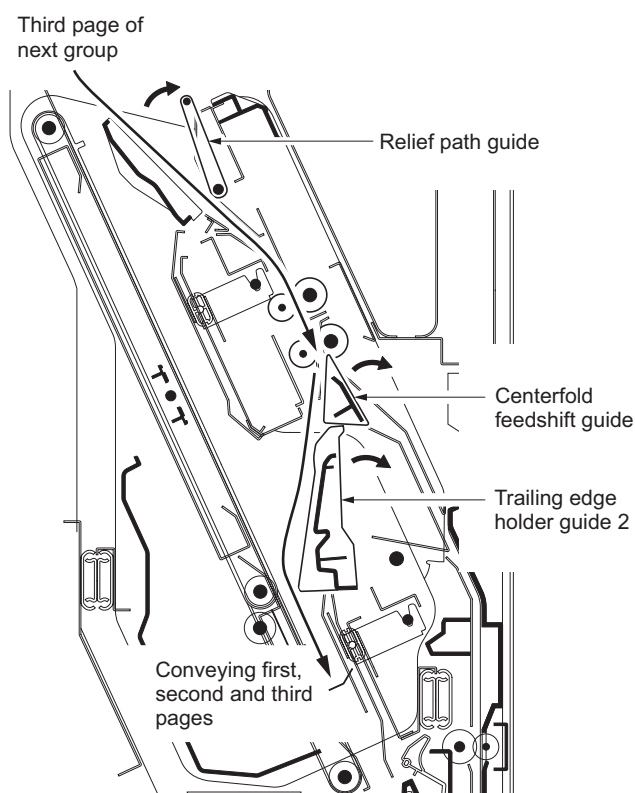
(1) Relief path operation

When more than one copy of A4 size paper are handled using the inner tray, feeding of the first and second pages of the next job is sustained until the third page is fed in order to retain the time during which paper feeding is progressed.

1. Trailing edge holder guide 1 operates with trailing edge holder solenoid 1 and first page of next group is carried to the relief section.
2. The relief path guide operates with the relief path solenoid to hold carried page.
3. In the same way, second page of next group is carried to the relief section to hold with first paper by the relief path guide.

**Figure 2-1-9**

4. When third page of next group is carried to the relief section, third page is conveyed to lower part of the inner tray with first and second pages. At this time, paper conveying path is switched with the operation of centerfold feedshift guide and trailing edge holder guide 2.

**Figure 2-1-10**

(2) Eject operation to the main tray

As for ejection to the main tray from the inner tray, paper conveying belt motor 1 and 2 drive to shift inner tray upper and lower sliding plates to upper direction by pushing up the paper.

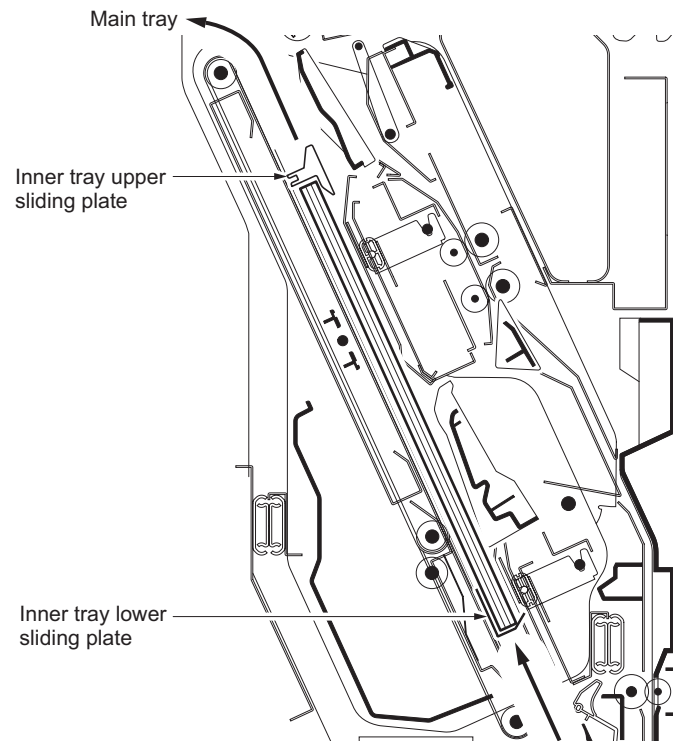


Figure 2-1-11

(3) Paper conveying operation to optional center-folding unit

Paper is fed into the center-folding unit by steering the paper within the inner tray as trailing edge holder solenoid 1, centerfold feedshift solenoid, and trailing edge holder guide 1 are energized respectively.

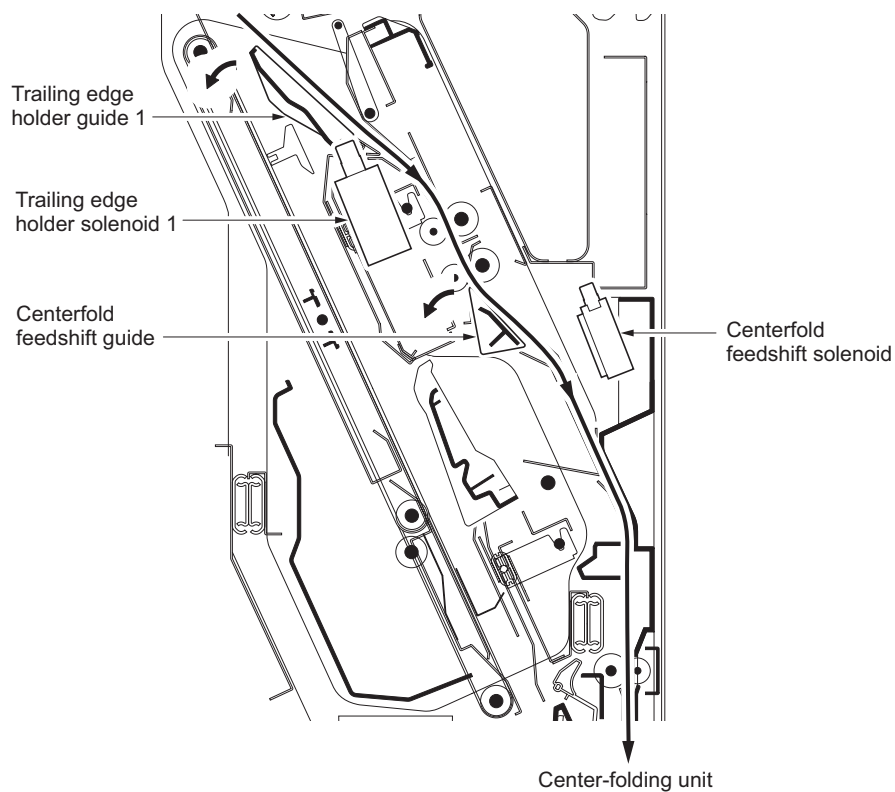


Figure 2-1-12

2-1-4 Staple section

In the staple mode, the paper which is conveyed in the inner tray are stapled by staple unit. Stapling positions are top-left, top-right, and two parts.

Staple moving motor 1 shifts front and rear of staple unit, and staple moving motor 2 rotates the staple unit.

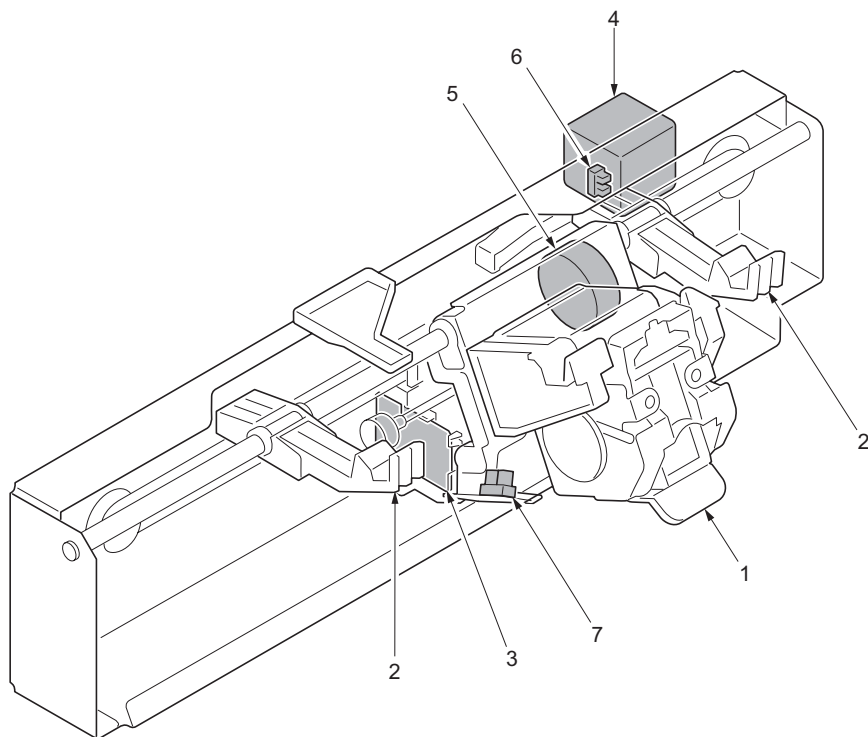


Figure 2-1-13 Staple section

- (1) Staple unit
- (2) Paper stack stopper
- (3) Staple relay PWB (STRPWB)
- (4) Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1)
- (5) Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2)
- (6) Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)
- (7) Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)

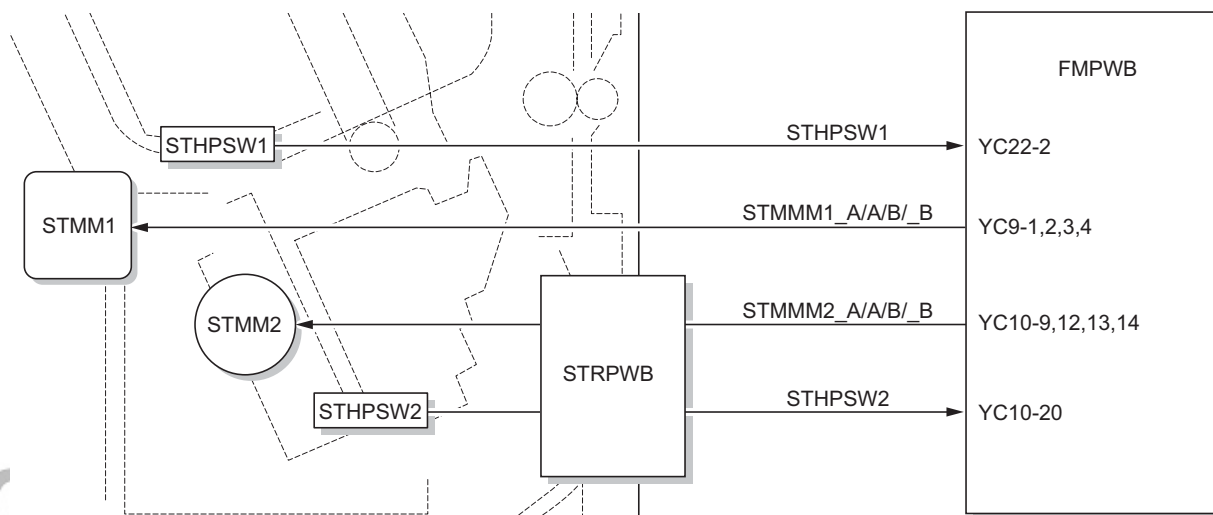


Figure 2-1-14 Staple section block diagram

2-1-5 Main tray eject section

In the sort mode or staple mode, paper is ejected to the main tray. In addition, by selecting the destination stack to the main tray, the paper is delivered to the main tray.

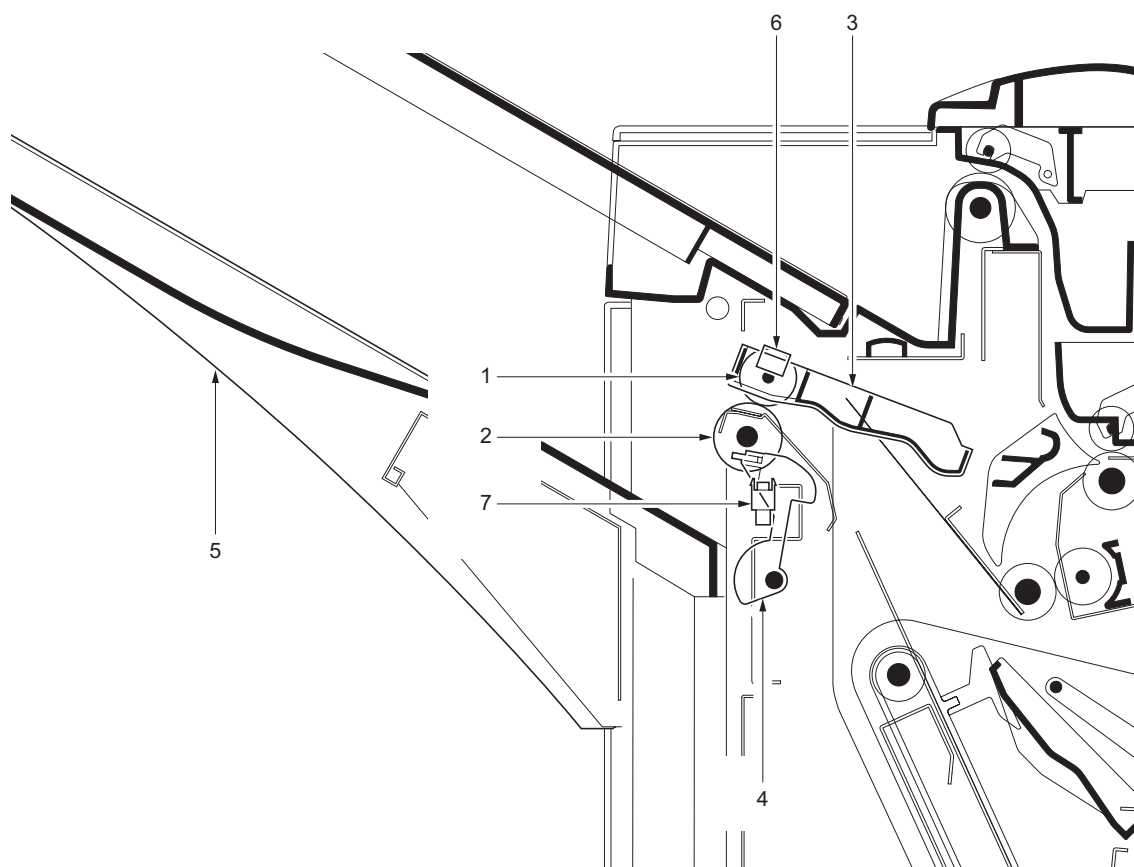


Figure 2-1-15 Main tray eject section

- (1) Eject pulley
- (2) Eject roller
- (3) Eject guide
- (4) Paper holding lever
- (5) Main tray
- (6) Eject switch 1 (ESW1)
- (7) Paper holder home position sensor (PHHS)

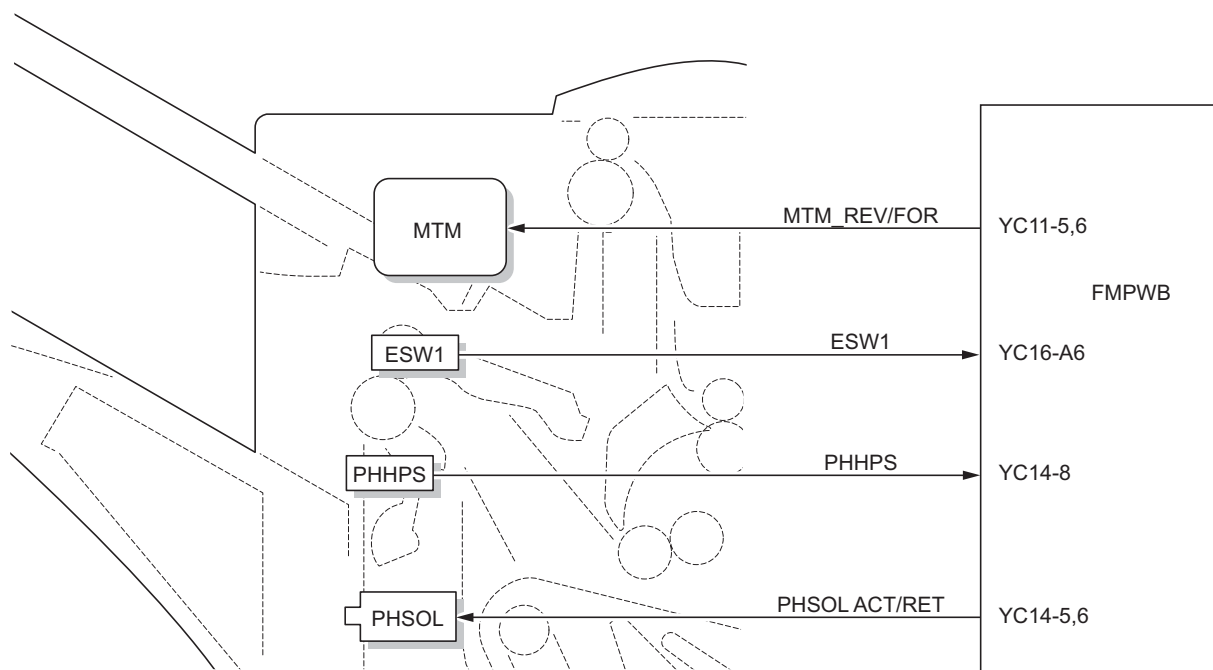


Figure 2-1-16 Main tray eject section block diagram

(1) Main tray elevation operation

The main tray lowers when paper is stacked on it. Once stacking has completed and paper has been removed, the main tray rises and stops at the home position. The main tray lowers and rises by the forward and backward rotation of the main tray motor, respectively. The position of the main tray for elevation is detected by the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1/2 as they sense the top surface of the paper loaded on the main tray. In addition, a paper empty state is detected by the main tray upper limit detection sensor as it senses the upper most (home) position of the main tray.

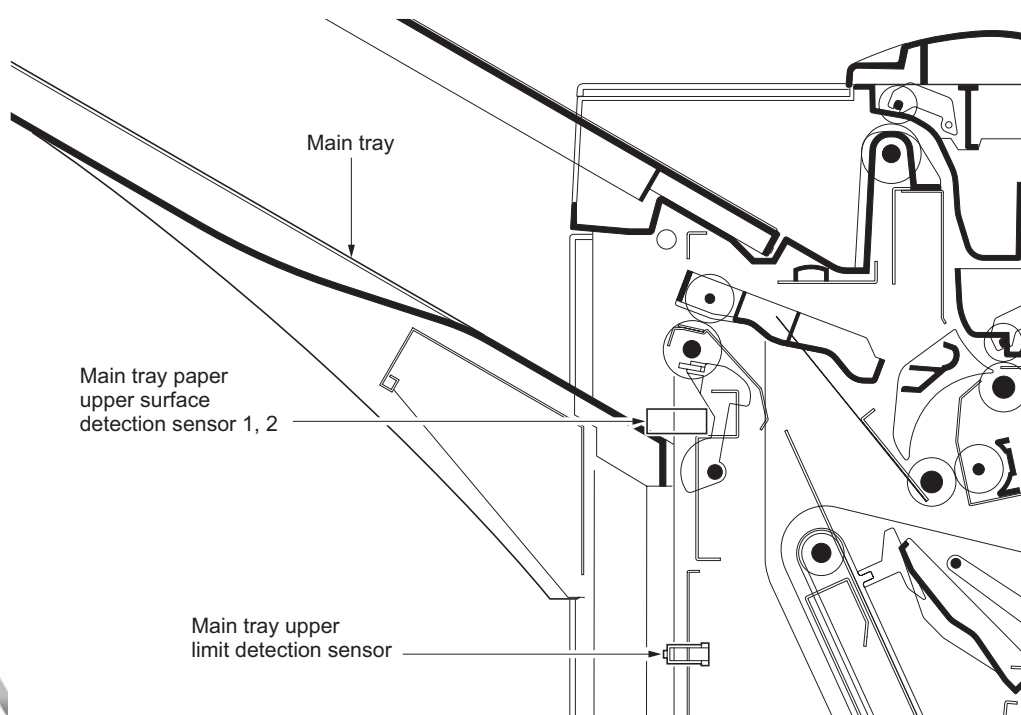


Figure 2-1-17

2-1-6 Center-folding unit section (option)

The center-folding unit delivers the paper into the centerfold tray after folding the center of the paper by the centerfold blade.

It also delivers the paper into the centerfold tray after the paper is center-folded as well as stapled by the centerfold staple unit.

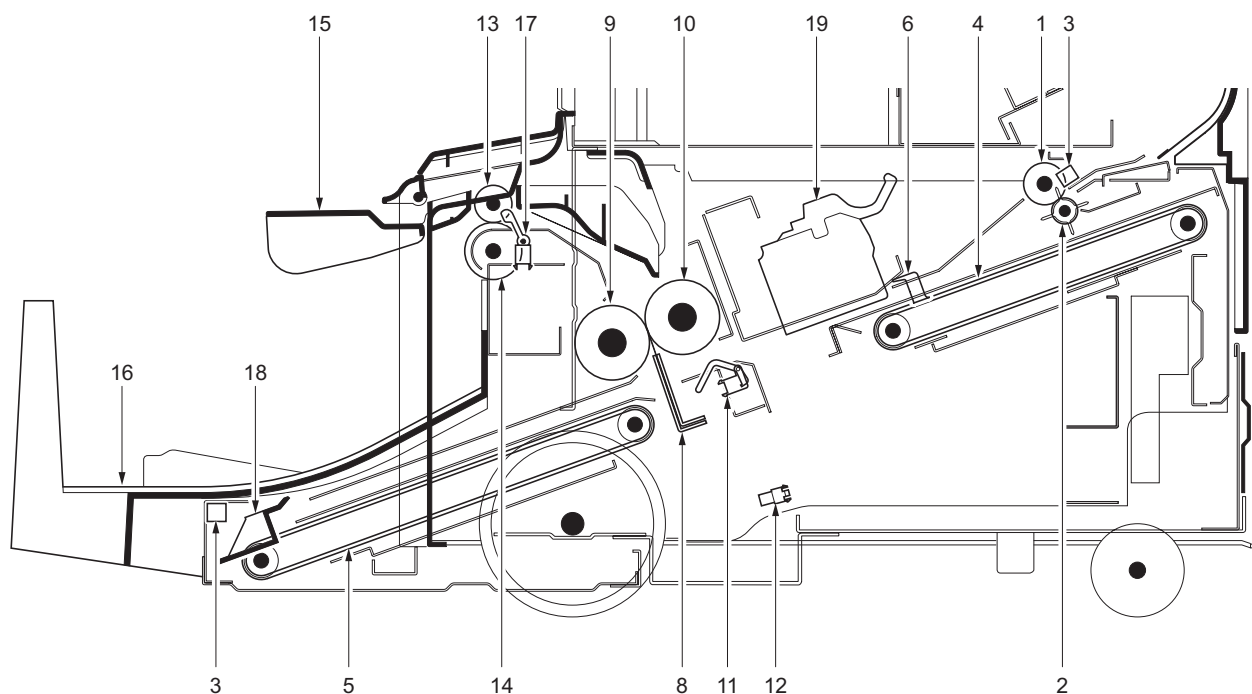


Figure 2-1-18 Center-folding unit

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) Centerfold paper entry roller | (11) Centerfold paper detection switch (CPDSW) |
| (2) Paper conveying pulley | (12) Blade home position switch (BLHPSW) |
| (3) Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) | (13) Eject pulley |
| (4) Centerfold upper paper conveying belt | (14) Centerfold eject roller |
| (5) Centerfold lower paper conveying belt | (15) Ejected paper holding arm |
| (6) Centerfold upper sliding plate | (16) Centerfold tray |
| (7) Centerfold lower sliding plate | (17) Centerfold eject switch (CESW) |
| (8) Centerfold blade | (18) Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS) |
| (9) Centerfold left roller | (19) Centerfold staple unit |
| (10) Centerfold right roller | |

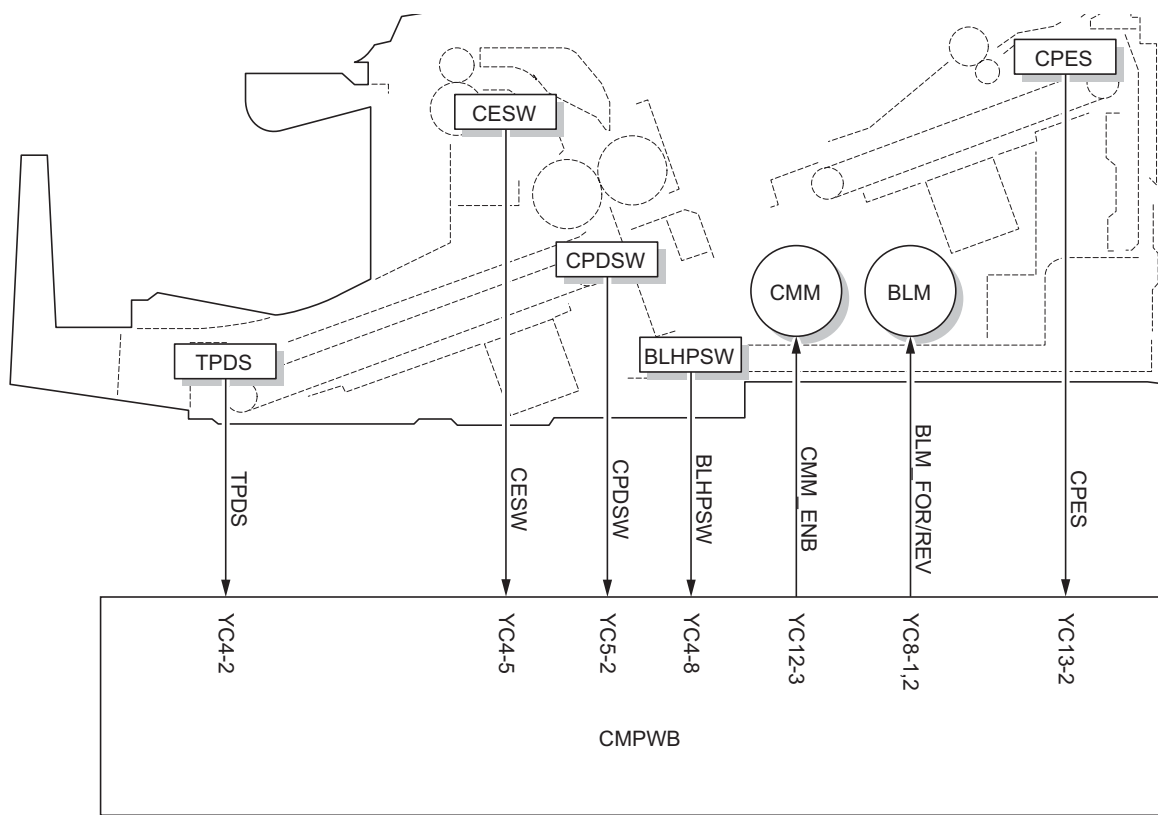
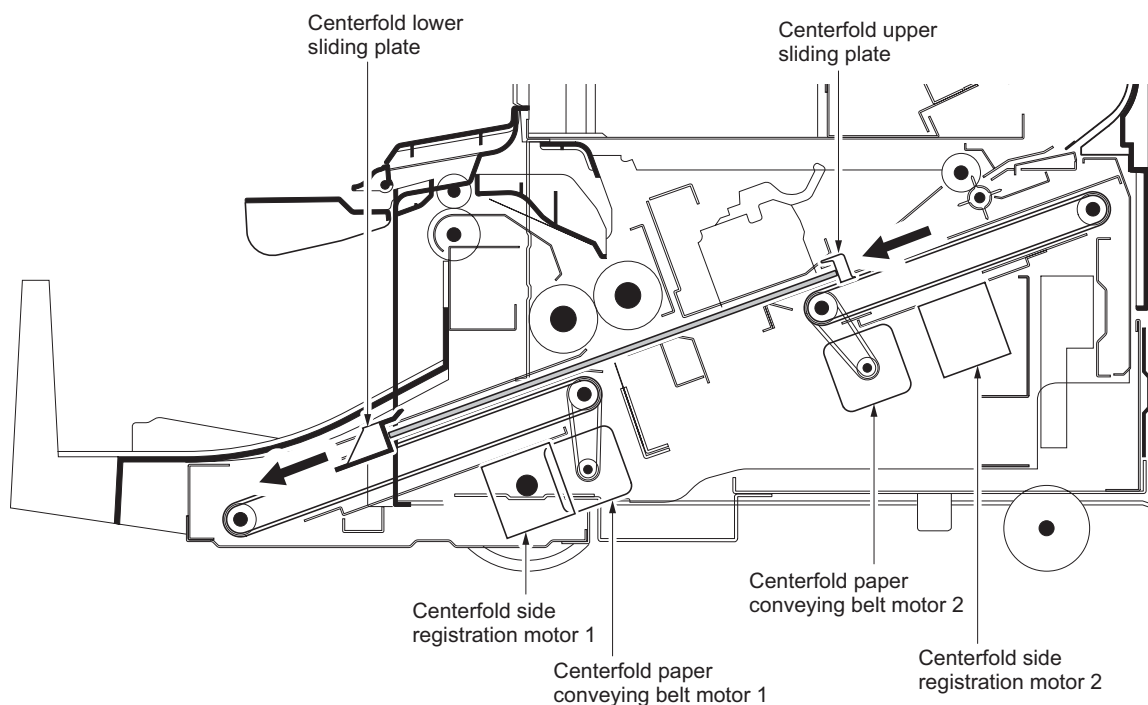


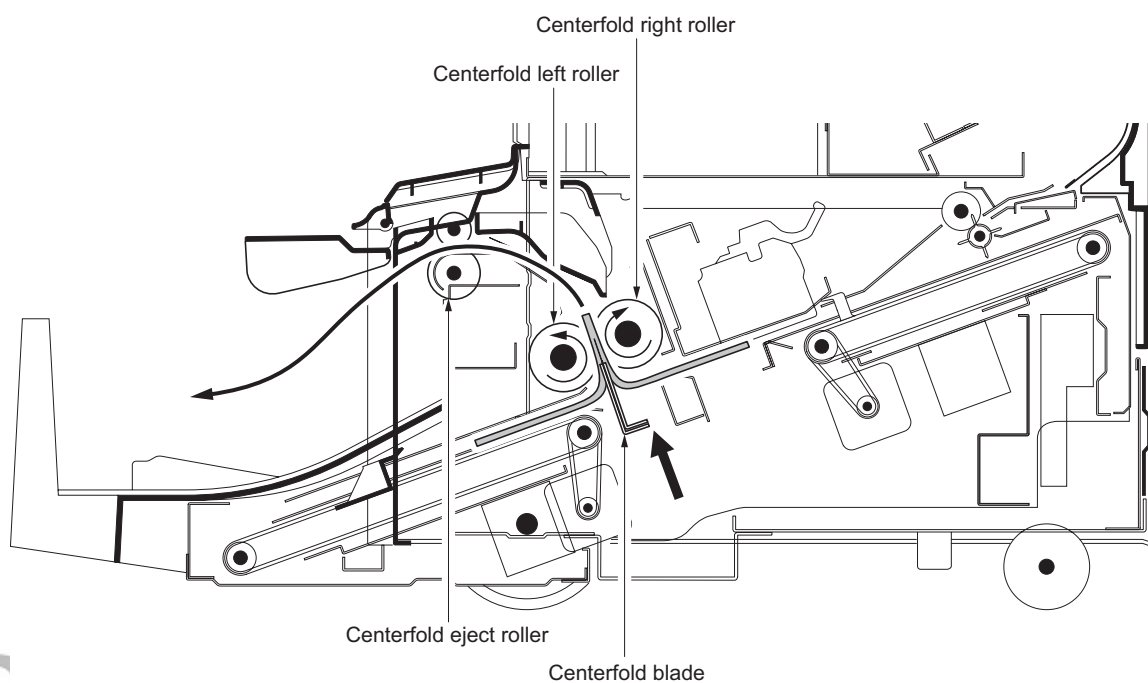
Figure 2-1-19 Center-folding unit block diagram

(1) Paper centerfold operation

1. The paper stuck at the center-folding unit is proceeded to the position at which it is centerfolded as driven by centerfold paper conveying belt motors 1 and 2.
2. Paper is aligned widthwise as centerfold side registration motors 1 and 2.

**Figure 2-1-20**

3. With the drive of the blade motor, the centerfold blade pushes up the center of the paper and crowds centerfold left and right rollers.
4. Center-folded paper is ejected to the centerfold tray with the operation of centerfold right and left rollers and centerfold eject roller.

**Figure 2-1-21**

2-1-7 Mailbox (option)

The mailbox ejects and stacks to specified tray 1 to 7.

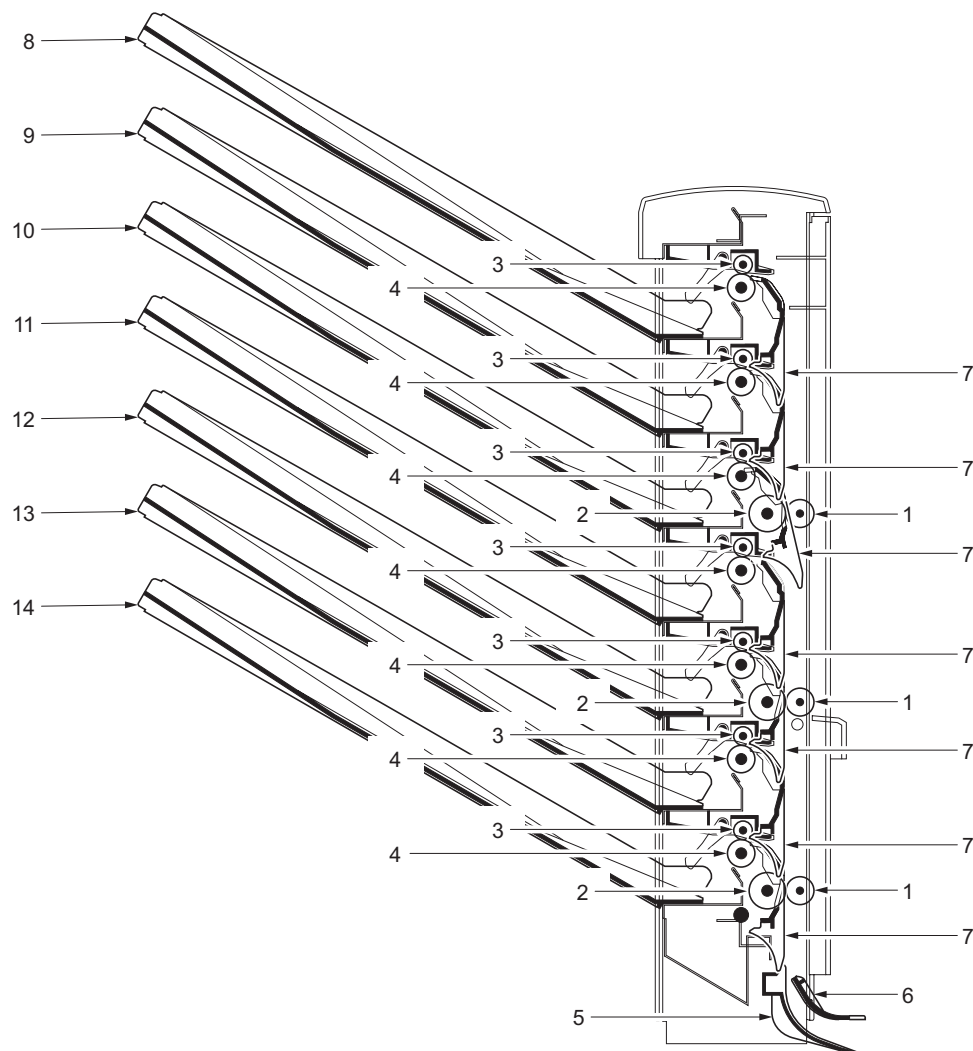


Figure 2-1-22 Mailbox

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------|
| (1) Paper conveying pulleys | (8) Tray 1 |
| (2) Paper conveying rollers | (9) Tray 2 |
| (3) Eject pulleys | (10) Tray 3 |
| (4) Eject rollers | (11) Tray 4 |
| (5) Lower paper entry guide | (12) Tray 5 |
| (6) Upper paper entry guide | (13) Tray 6 |
| (7) Feedshift claws | (14) Tray 7 |

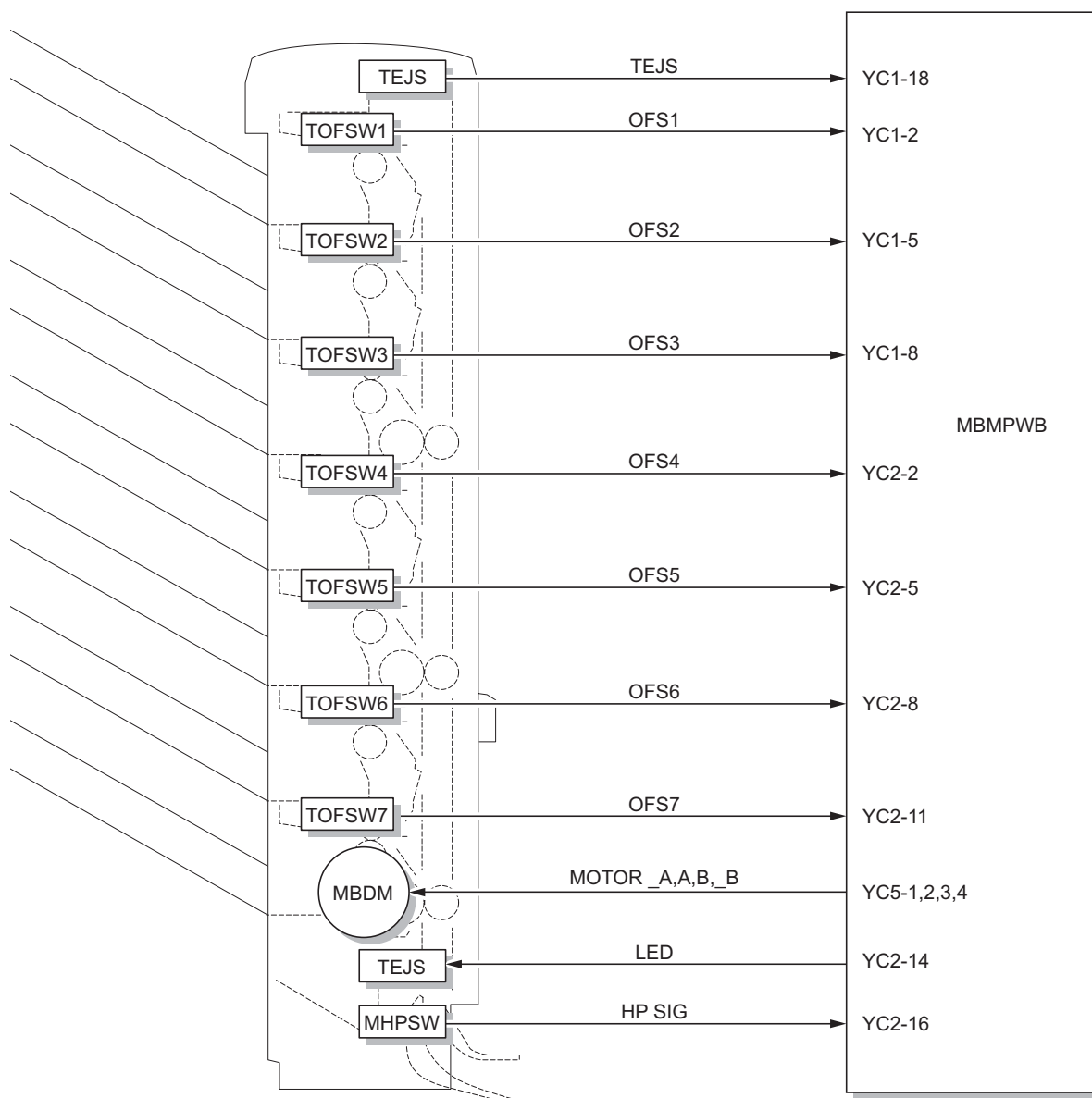
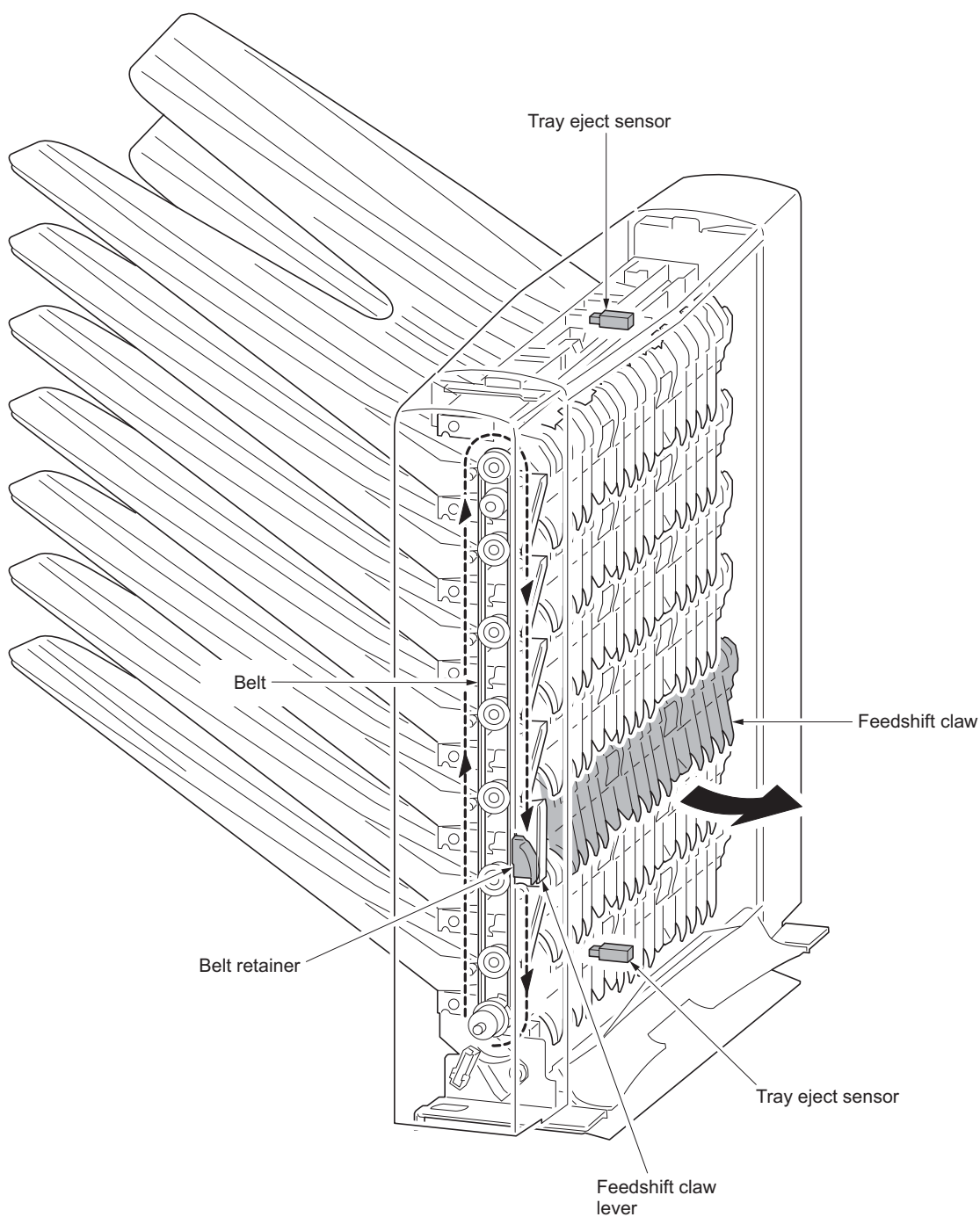


Figure 2-1-23 Mailbox block diagram

(1) Eject operation to mailbox tray

When the belt retainer that moves on the belt passes through the feedshift claw lever, the feedshift claw is activated to switch the paper path for ejection to each tray. In addition, the tray eject sensor detects paper jam.

**Figure 2-1-24**

2-1-8 Punch unit (option)

The punch unit is installed on the paper insertion section of the finisher. It stops paper conveyance and punches paper.

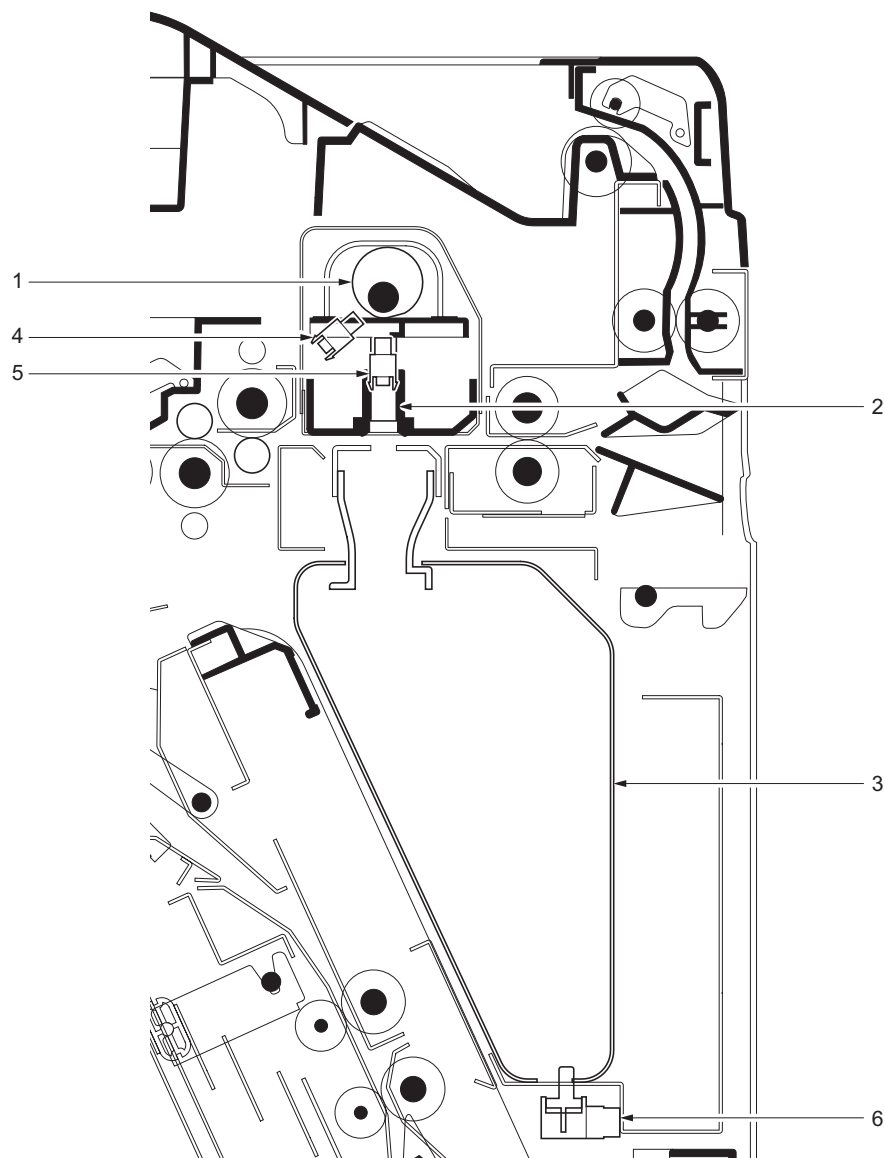


Figure 2-1-25 Punch unit

- (1) Punch cam
- (2) Punch cutter
- (3) Punch waste box
- (4) Punch home position sensor (PHPS)
- (5) Punch pulse sensor (PPS)
- (6) Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)

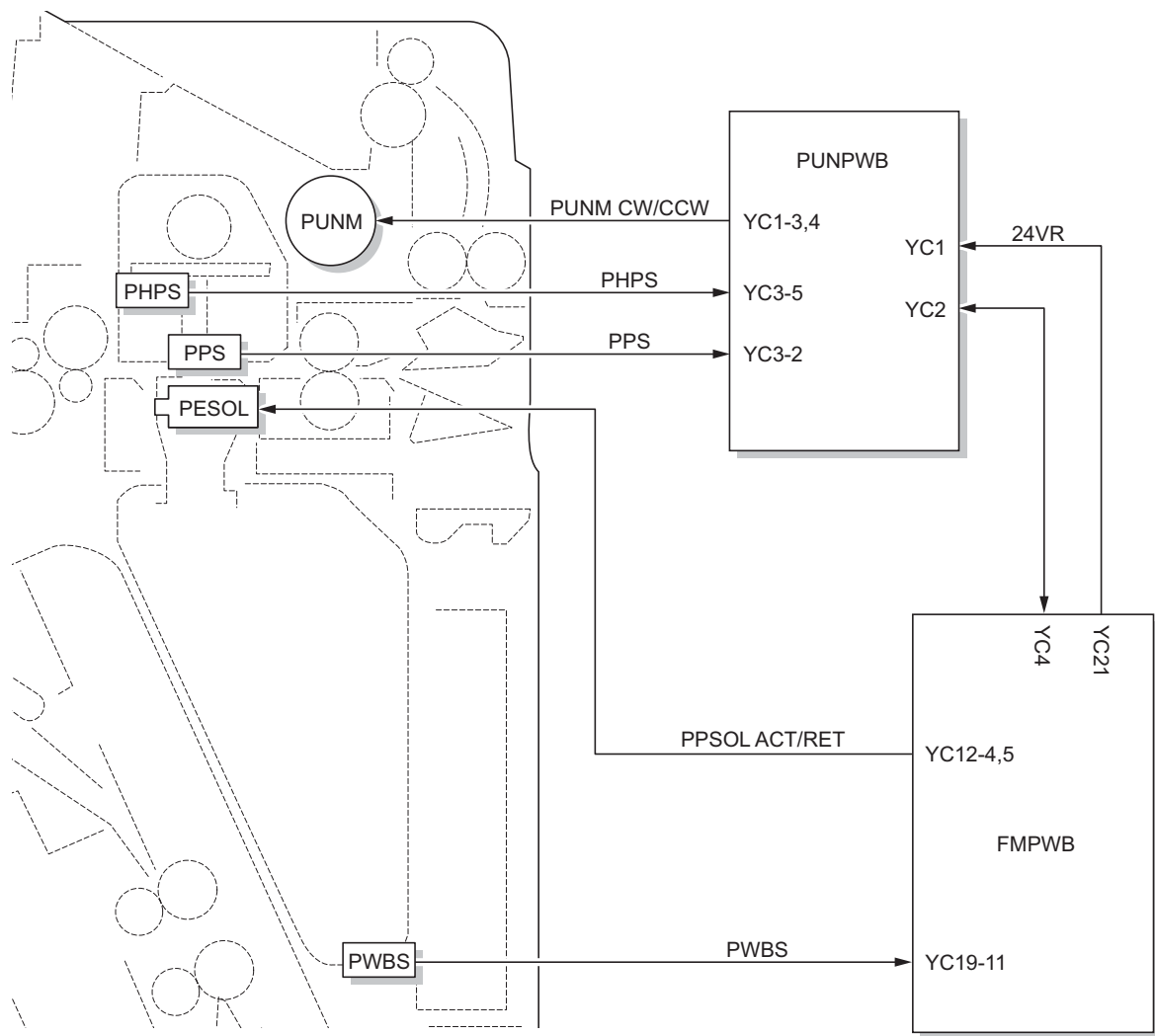


Figure 2-1-26 Punch unit block diagram

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) PWBs

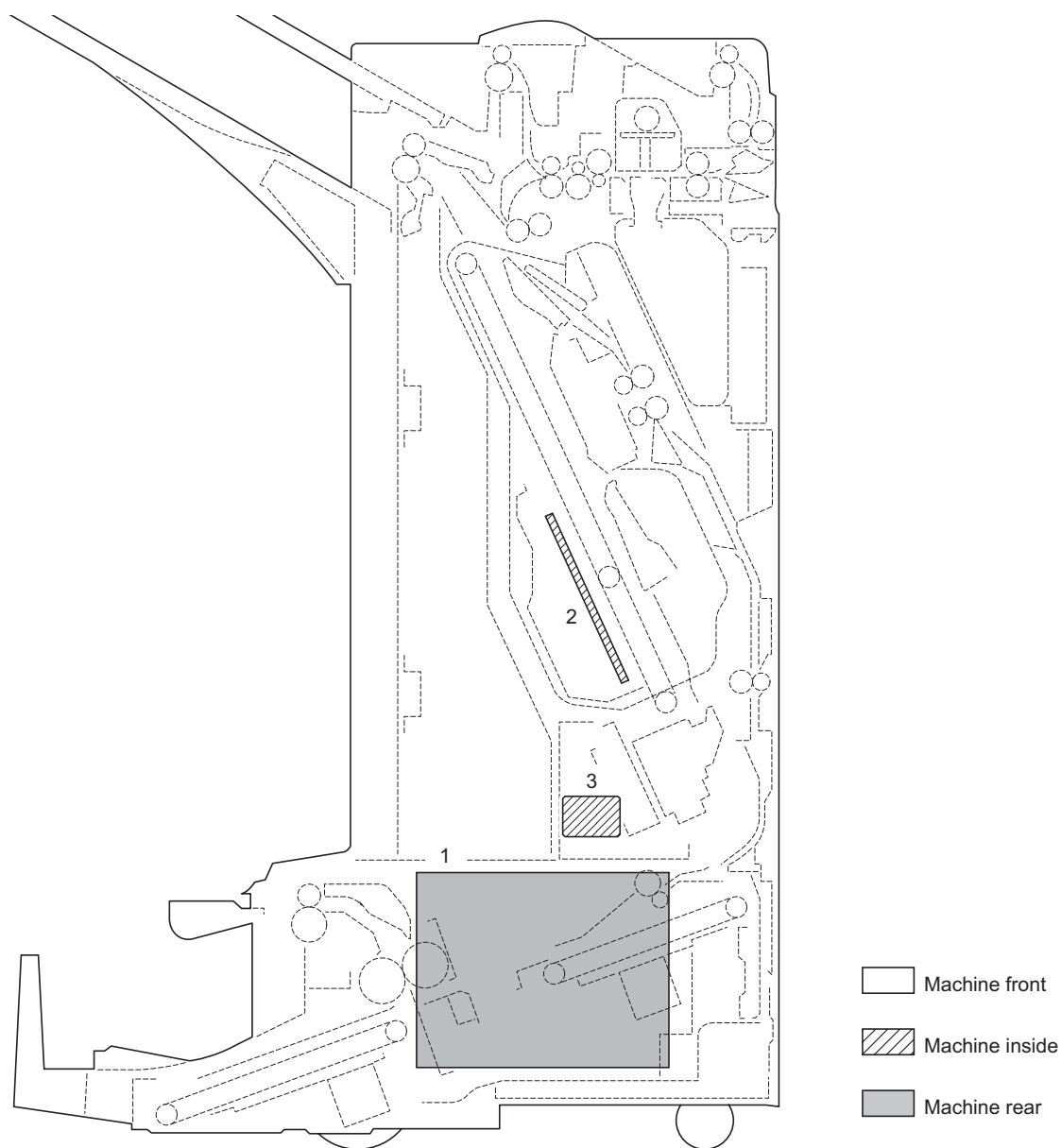
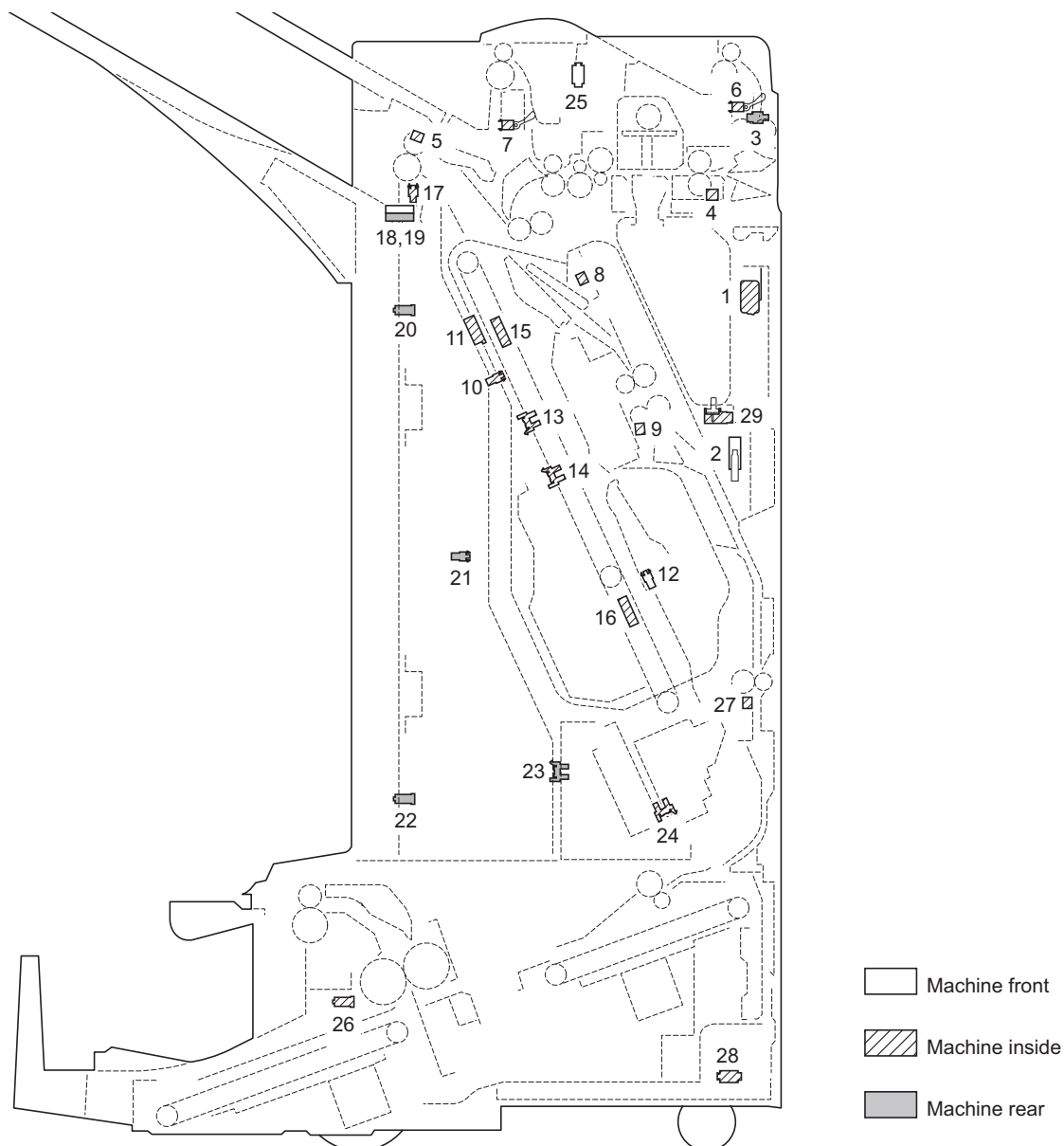


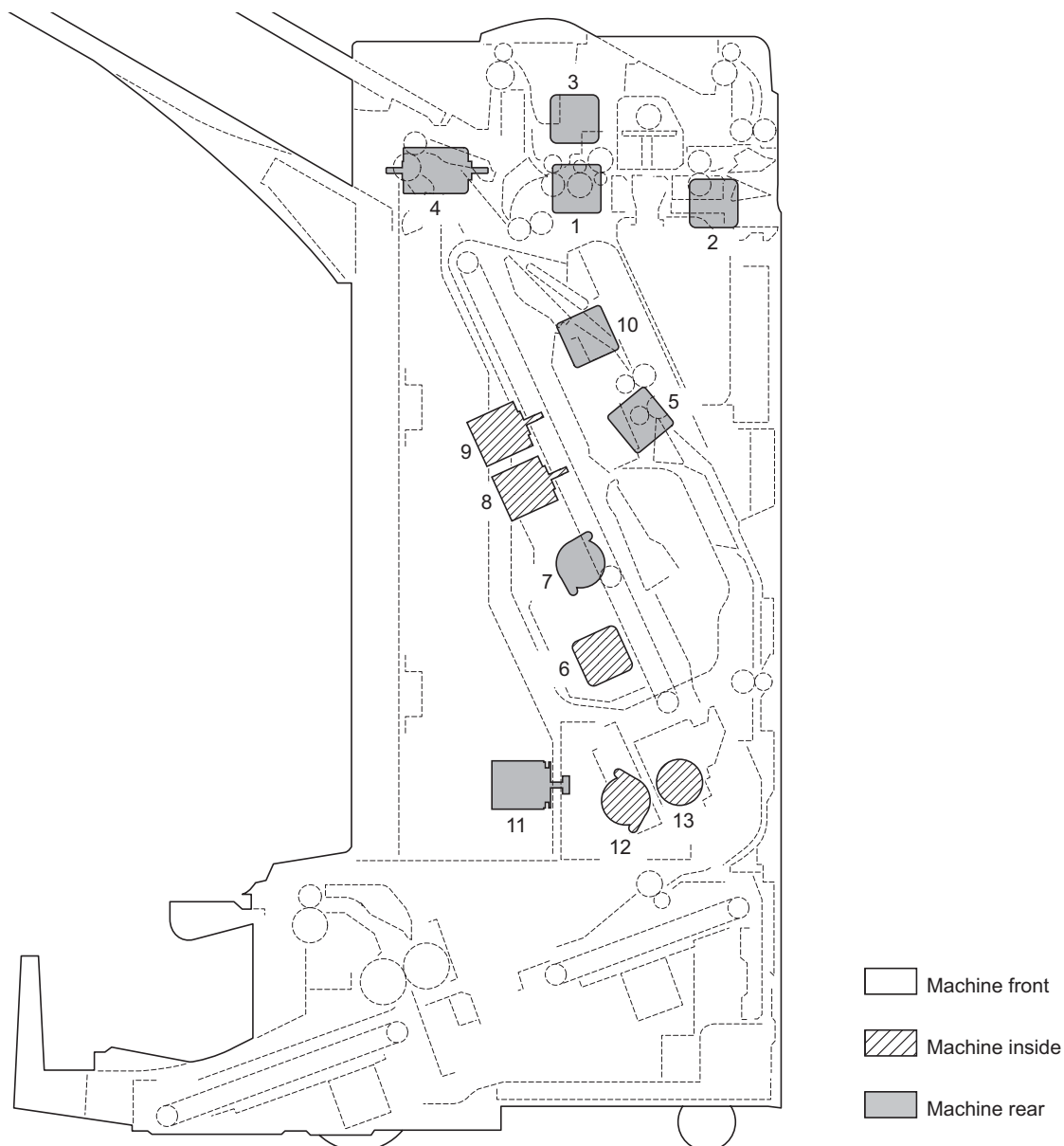
Figure 2-2-1 PWBs

1. Finisher main PWB (FMPWB) Controls electric components of finisher.
2. Inner tray PWB (ITPWB) Controls electric components of inner tray.
3. Staple relay PWB (STRPWB) Relay the staple unit control signal.

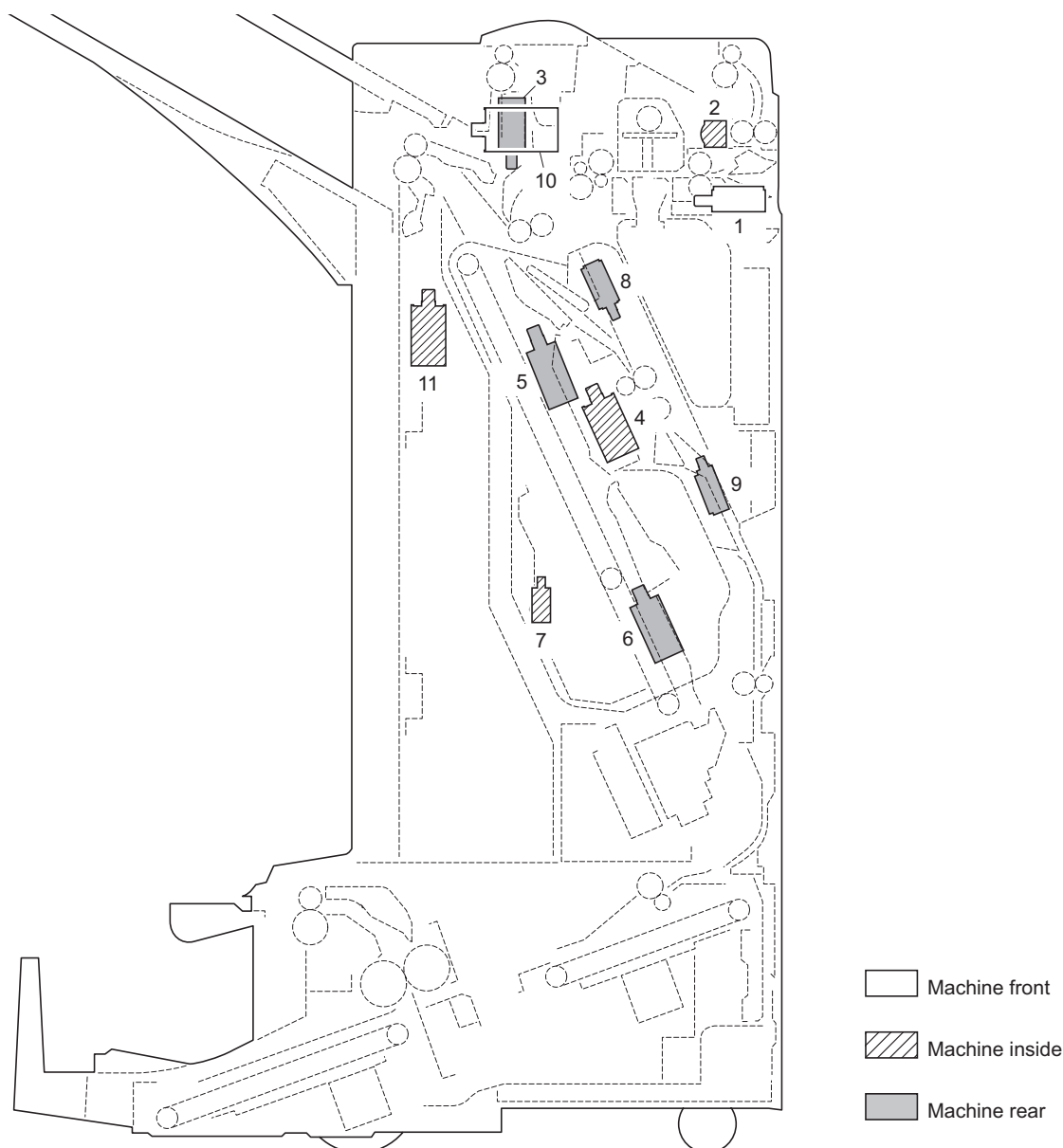
(2) Switches and sensors**Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors**

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Joint switch (JSW) | Detects the connection to the machine. |
| 2. Front cover switch (FCSW) | Detects the front cover is open. |
| 3. Top cover switch (TCSW) | Detects the top cover is open. |
| 4. Paper entry sensor (PES) | Detects insertion of paper in the finisher. |
| 5. Eject switch 1 (ESW1) | Detects ejection of paper to the main tray. |
| 6. Eject switch 2 (ESW2) | Detects ejection of paper to the right sub tray. |
| 7. Eject switch 3 (ESW3) | Detects ejection of paper to the left sub tray. |
| 8. Inner tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1) | Detection of paper jam in the inner tray. |
| 9. Inner tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) | Detection of paper jam in the inner tray. |
| 10. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1) | Detects home position of the inner tray lower sliding plate. |

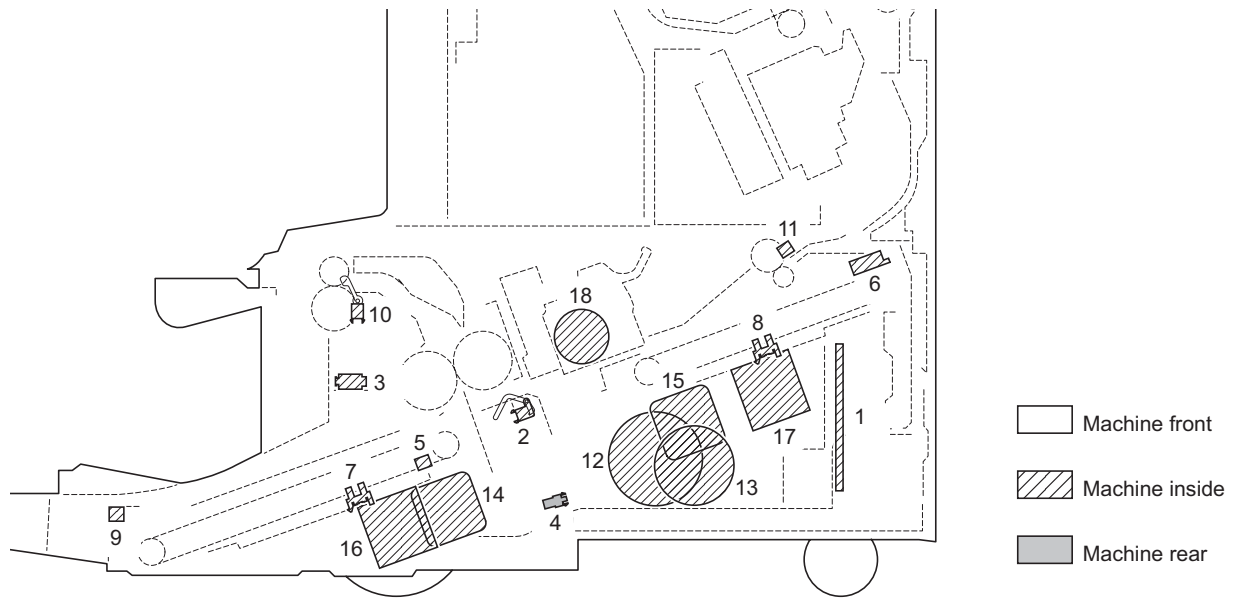
11. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2) Detects home position of the inner tray upper sliding plate.
12. Paper conveying belt position detection sensor (PCBDS) Detection of inner tray lower sliding plate position.
13. Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1) Detects home position of the side registration.
14. Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2) Detects home position of the side registration.
15. Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1) Detects paper in the inner tray.
16. Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2) Detects paper in the inner tray.
17. Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS) Detects home position of the paper holder.
18. Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1 (MTPUSDS1) Detects upper surface of paper in the main tray.
19. Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 2 (MTPUSDS2) Detects upper surface of paper in the main tray.
20. Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS) Detects upper limit position of the main tray.
21. Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS) Detects the position of the main tray.
22. Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS) Detects lower limit position of the main tray.
23. Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1) Detects home position of the front and rear staple unit.
24. Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2) Detects home position of the skewed staple unit.
25. Sub tray right switch (STRSW) Detects the right sub tray is open.
26. Centerfold set switch (CSSW) Detects optional center-folding unit is installed.
27. Centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) Detects paper conveying to optional center-folding unit.
28. Centerfold unit switch (CUSW) Detects the connection to optional center-folding unit.
29. Punch waste box sensor (PWBS) Detects the punch waste box is installed.

(3) Motors**Figure 2-2-3 Motors**

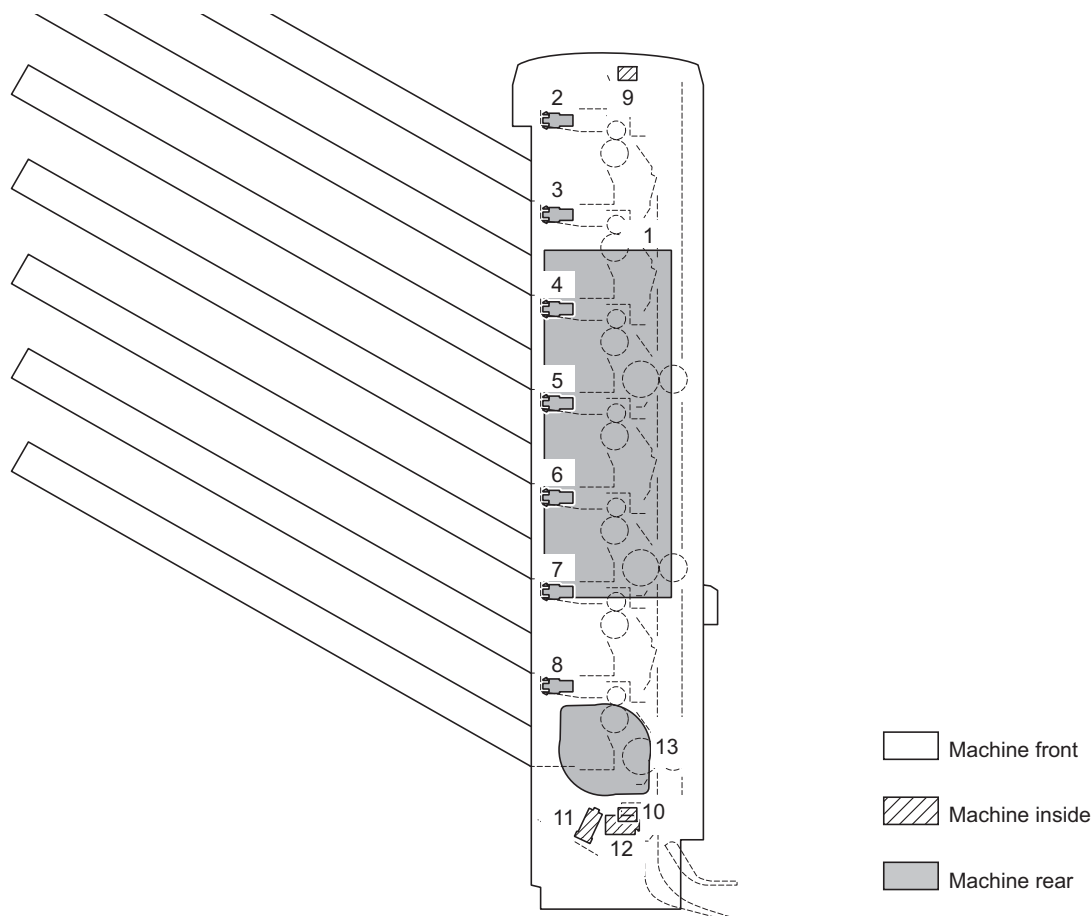
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Paper conveying motor (PCM)..... | Drives paper conveying section. |
| 2. Paper entry motor (PEM) | Drives the paper entry roller. |
| 3. Eject motor (EJM) | Drives the eject roller. |
| 4. Main tray motor (MTM) | Raises/Lowers the main tray. |
| 5. Relief path motor (RPM) | Drives relief path section. |
| 6. Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) | Drives paper conveying belt and inner tray lower sliding plate. |
| 7. Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) | Drives paper conveying belt and inner tray upper sliding plate. |
| 8. Side registration motor 1 (SRM1) | Drives side registration guide. |
| 9. Side registration motor 2 (SRM2) | Drives side registration guide. |
| 10. Paddle motor (PDM) | Drives paddle. |
| 11. Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) | Drives the front and rear staple unit. |
| 12. Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) | Drives the skewed staple unit. |
| 13. Staple motor (STM)..... | Drives the staple. |

(4) Solenoids**Figure 2-2-4 Solenoids**

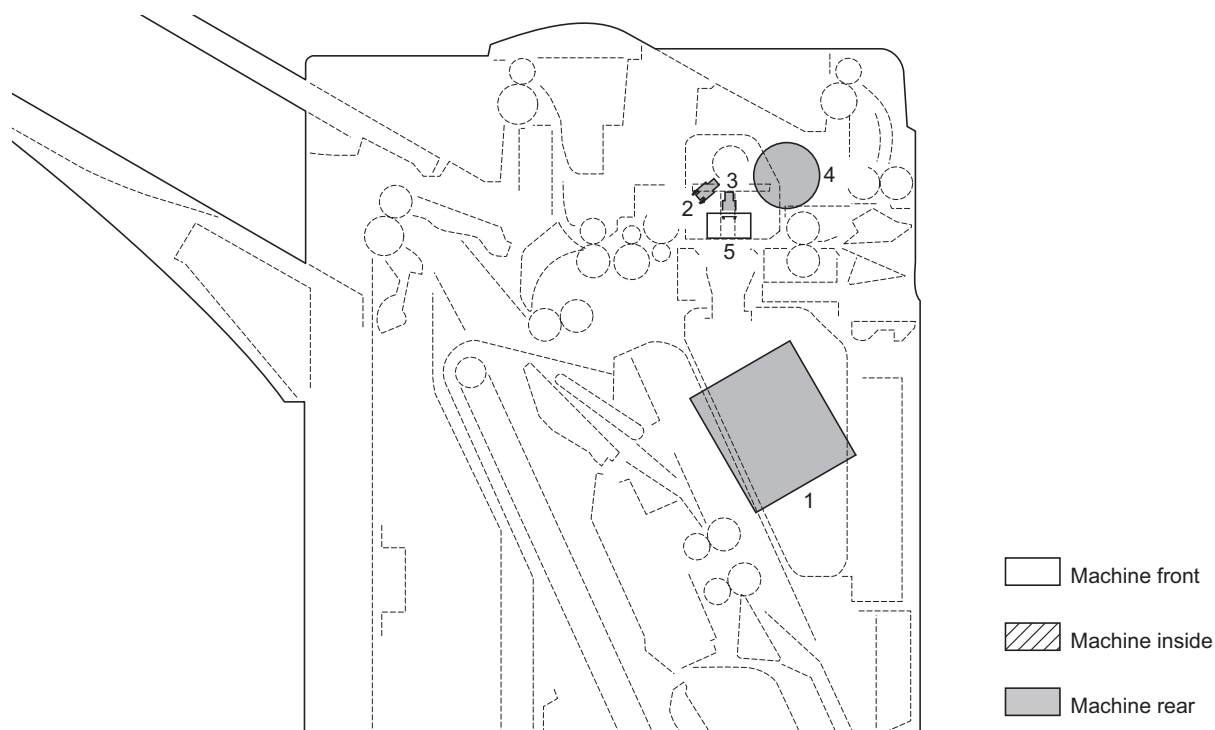
1. Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)..... Operates paper entry guide.
2. Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)..... Operates feedshift guide 1.
3. Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)..... Operates feedshift guide 2.
4. Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)..... Operates paddle.
5. Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)..... Operates trailing edge holder guide 1.
6. Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)..... Operates trailing edge holder guide 2.
7. Lock solenoid (LSOL) Operates the inner tray holder.
8. Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)..... Operates relief path guide.
9. Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)..... Operates centerfold feedshift guide.
10. Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)..... Switches paper retaining pressure while ejecting.
11. Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL) Operates paper holder lever.

(5) Center-folding unit (option)**Figure 2-2-5 Center-folding unit**

1. Centerfold main PWB (CMPWB) Controls electric components of center-folding unit.
2. Centerfold paper detection switch (CPDSW) Detection of paper in the center-folding unit.
3. Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW) Detects the centerfold unit top cover is attached in optional center-folding unit.
4. Blade home position switch (BLHPSW) Detects home position of the centerfold blade.
5. Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1) Detects home position of the centerfold paper conveying belt.
6. Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2) Detects home position of the centerfold paper conveying belt.
7. Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1) Detects home position of the centerfold side registration.
8. Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2) Detects home position of the centerfold side registration.
9. Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS) Detection of paper in the centerfold tray.
10. Centerfold eject switch (CESW) Detects ejection of the paper to the centerfold tray.
11. Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) Detects insertion of paper in the center-folding unit.
12. Centerfold main motor (CMM) Drives paper conveying section of the center-folding unit.
13. Blade motor (BLM) Drives centerfold blade.
14. Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1) Drives centerfold paper conveying belt.
15. Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2) Drives centerfold paper conveying belt.
16. Centerfold side registration motor 1 (CSRM1) Drives side registration guides.
17. Centerfold side registration motor 2 (CSRM2) Drives side registration guides.
18. Centerfold staple motor (CSTM) Drives the centerfold staple.

(6) Mailbox (option)**Figure 2-2-6 Mailbox**

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Mailbox main PWB (MBMPWB)..... | Controls electric components of mailbox. |
| 2. Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1) | Detected overflow of ejected to tray 1. |
| 3. Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2) | Detected overflow of ejected to tray 2. |
| 4. Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3) | Detected overflow of ejected to tray 3. |
| 5. Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4) | Detected overflow of ejected to tray 4. |
| 6. Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5) | Detected overflow of ejected to tray 5. |
| 7. Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6) | Detected overflow of ejected to tray 6. |
| 8. Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7) | Detected overflow of ejected to tray 7. |
| 9. Tray eject sensor (TEJS) | Detection of paper jam. |
| 10. Tray eject sensor (TEJS) | Radiates the pulse of LED. |
| 11. Mail home position switch (MHPSW) | Controls mailbox drive motor. |
| 12. Mailbox cover open/close switch
(MBCOSW) | Detects the mailbox cover is open. |
| 13. Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) | Drives paper conveying section of mailbox. |

(7) Punch unit (option)**Figure 2-2-7 Punch unit**

1. Punch PWB (PUNPWB) Controls electric components of punch unit.
2. Punch home position sensor (PHPS) Detects home position of the punch cam.
3. Punch pulse sensor (PPS)..... Controls the rotation of punch cam.
4. Punch motor (PUNM)..... Drives punching.
5. Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)..... Switches the punch position.

2-3-1 Finisher main PWB

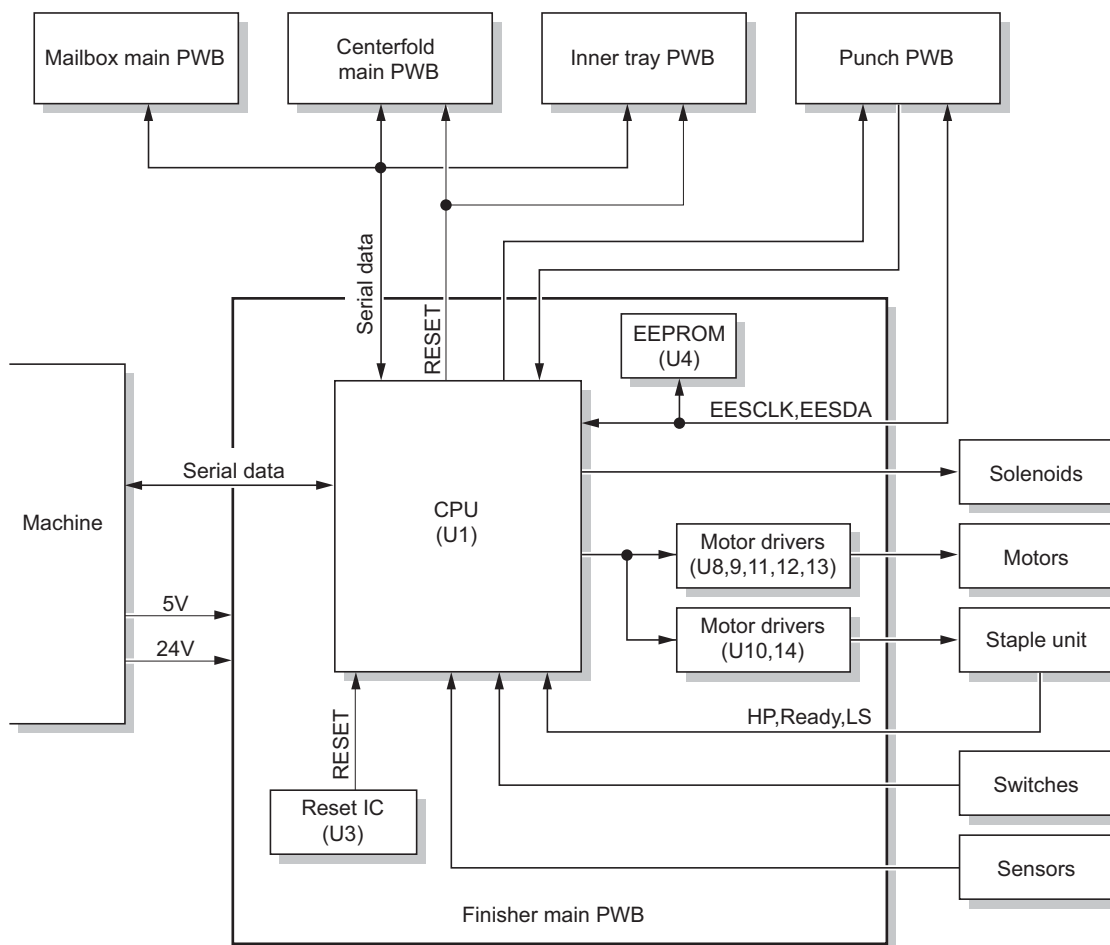


Figure 2-3-1 Finisher main PWB block diagram

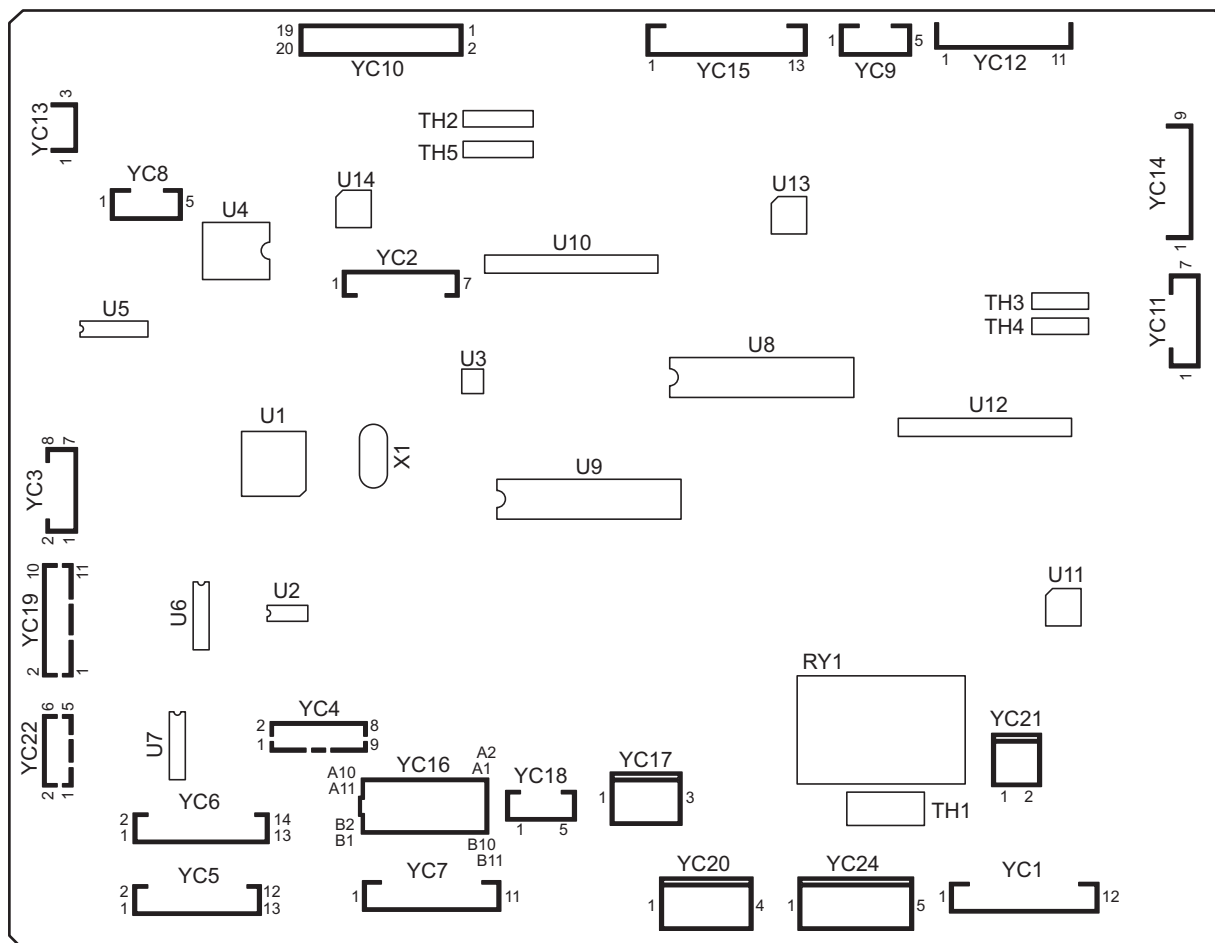


Figure 2-3-2 Finisher main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the joint switch, front cover switch and sub tray right switch	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	NC	-	-	Not used
	4	JSW	I	0/24 V DC	JSW: On/Off
	5	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	6	NC	-	-	Not used
	7	NC	-	-	Not used
	8	FCSW	I	0/24 V DC	FCSW: On/Off
	9	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	10	NC	-	-	Not used
	11	NC	-	-	Not used
	12	STRSW	I	0/24 V DC	STRSW: On/Off
YC3 Connected to the machine	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	DF RDY	O	0/5 V DC	Ready signal to machine
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	DF SEL	I	0/5 V DC	Select signal from machine
	5	SCLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal from machine
	6	SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal to machine
	7	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal from machine
	8	DETECTION	O	0/5 V DC	Detection signal to machine
YC4 Connected to the punch PWB	1	EESDA	I/O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Punch unit serial communication data signal
	2	EESCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Punch unit clock signal
	3	REM-C	O	0/5 V DC	Punch unit remote signal
	4	REM-I	O	0/5 V DC	Punch unit remote signal
	5	READY	I	0/5 V DC	Punch unit ready signal
	6	ERROR	I	0/5 V DC	Punch unit error signal
	7	DETECTION	I	0/5 V DC	Punch unit detection signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC5 Connected to the centerfold main PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	SCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Center-folding unit clock signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Center-folding unit serial communication data signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Center-folding unit serial communication data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	CU RDY	I	0/5 V DC	Center-folding unit ready signal
	9	CU SEL	O	0/5 V DC	Center-folding unit select signal
	10	RESET	O	0/5 V DC	Center-folding unit reset signal
	11	DETECTION	I	0/5 V DC	Center-folding unit detection signal
	12	CPCS	O	0/5 V DC	CPCS: On/Off
	13	NC	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6 Connected to the inner tray PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	SCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB clock signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB serial communication data signal
	5	CLK COUNT ST	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB clock signal
	6	SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB serial communication data signal
	7	MOT CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB clock signal
	8	ITPWB RDY	I	0/5 V DC	ITPWB ready signal
	9	ITPWB SEL	O	0/5 V DC	ITPWB select signal
	10	RESET	O	0/5 V DC	ITPWB reset signal
	11	DETECTION	I	0/5 V DC	ITPWB detection signal
	12	PES	O	0/5 V DC	PES: On/Off
YC7 Connected to the mail-box main PWB	1	MB RDY	I	0/5 V DC	Mailbox ready signal
	2	MB SEL	O	0/5 V DC	Mailbox select signal
	3	MB CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Mailbox clock signal
	4	MB SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Mailbox serial communication data signal
	5	MB SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Mailbox serial communication data signal
	6	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	7	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
YC9 Connected to the staple moving motor 1	1	STMM1_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STMM1 drive control signal
	2	STMM1 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STMM1 drive control signal
	3	STMM1 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STMM1 drive control signal
	4	STMM1_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STMM1 drive control signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC10 Connected to the staple relay PWB	1	STM F	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STM drive control signal
	2	STM F	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STM drive control signal
	3	STM F	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STM drive control signal
	4	STM F	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STM drive control signal
	5	STM R	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STM drive control signal
	6	STM R	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STM drive control signal
	7	STM R	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STM drive control signal
	8	STM R	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STM drive control signal
	9	STMM2 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STMM2 drive control signal
	10	NC	-	-	Not used
	11	NC	-	-	Not used
	12	STMM2_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STMM2 drive control signal
	13	STMM2 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STMM2 drive control signal
	14	STMM2_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	STMM2 drive control signal
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	STLS	I	0/5 V DC	Staple unit LS signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10 Connected to the staple relay PWB	17	STRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Staple unit ready signal
	18	STHP	I	0/5 V DC	Staple unit HP signal
	19	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	20	STHPSW2	I	0/5 V DC	STHPSW2: On/Off
YC11 Connected to the eject motor and main tray motor	1	EJM_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EJM drive control signal
	2	EJM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EJM drive control signal
	3	EJM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EJM drive control signal
	4	EJM_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EJM drive control signal
	5	MTM REV	O	0/24 V DC	MTM: On/Off (reverse)
	6	MTM FOR	O	0/24 V DC	MTM: On/Off (forward)
	7	NC	-	-	Not used
YC12 Connected to the pressure switching solenoid, punch pattern solenoid, paper entry solenoid and feedshift solenoid 1	1	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	PSWSOL ACT	O	0/24 V DC	PSWSOL: On/Off
	3	NC	-	-	Not used
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	NC	-	-	Not used
	6	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	7	PESOL ACT	O	0/24 V DC	PESOL: On/Off (activate)
	8	PESOL RET	O	0/24 V DC	PESOL: On/Off (return)
	9	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	10	FSSOL1 ACT	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL1: On/Off (activate)
	11	FSSOL1 RET	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL1: On/Off (return)
YC13 Connected to the centerfold paper conveying sensor	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	CPCS	I	0/5 V DC	CPCS: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC14 Connected to the feedshift solenoid 2, paper holder solenoid and paper holder home position sensor	1	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	FSSOL2 ACT	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL2: On/Off (activate)
	3	FSSOL2 RET	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL2: On/Off (return)
	4	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	5	PHSOL ACT	O	0/24 V DC	PHSOL: On/Off (activate)
	6	PHSOL RET	O	0/24 V DC	PHSOL: On/Off (return)
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	PHHPS	I	0/5 V DC	PHHPS: On/Off
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC15 Connected to the paper entry motor and paper conveying motor	1	PEM_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PEM drive control signal
	2	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	PEM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PEM drive control signal
	4	PEM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PEM drive control signal
	5	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	6	PEM_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PEM drive control signal
	7	PCM_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCM drive control signal
	8	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	9	PCM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCM drive control signal
	10	PCM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCM drive control signal
	11	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	12	PCM_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCM drive control signal
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
YC16 Connected to the eject switch 1/3, main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1/2, main tray upper limit detection sensor, main tray middle position detection sensor and main tray lower limit detection sensor	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	ESW3	I	0/5 V DC	ESW3: On/Off
	A4	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A5	GND	-	-	Ground
	A6	ESW1	I	0/5 V DC	ESW1: On/Off
	A7	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A8	MTPUSDS1	I	0/5 V DC	MTPUSDS1: On/Off
	A9	GND	-	-	Ground
	A10	MTPUSDS2	I	0/5 V DC	MTPUSDS2: On/Off
	A11	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B2	MTPUSDS1	O	0/5 V DC	MTPUSDS1: On/Off
	B3	GND	-	-	Ground
	B4	MTULS	I	0/5 V DC	MTULS: On/Off
	B5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	MTMPS	I	0/5 V DC	MTMPS: On/Off
	B8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	MTLLS	I	0/5 V DC	MTLLS: On/Off
	B11	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC17 Connected to the machine	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC18 Connected to the machine	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC19 Connected to the eject switch 2, top cover switch, paper entry sensor and punch waste box sensor	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	ESW2	I	0/5 V DC	ESW2: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	TCSW	I	0/5 V DC	TCSW: On/Off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	PES	I	0/5 V DC	PES: On/Off
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	11	PWBS	I	0/5 V DC	PWBS: On/Off
YC20 Connected to the centerfold main PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC21 Connected to the punch PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC22 Connected to the staple home position switch 1 and centerfold set switch	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	STHPSW1	I	0/5 V DC	STHPSW1: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	CSSW	I	0/5 V DC	CSSW: On/Off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC24 Connected to the inner tray PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	5	NC	-	-	Not used

2-3-2 Inner tray PWB

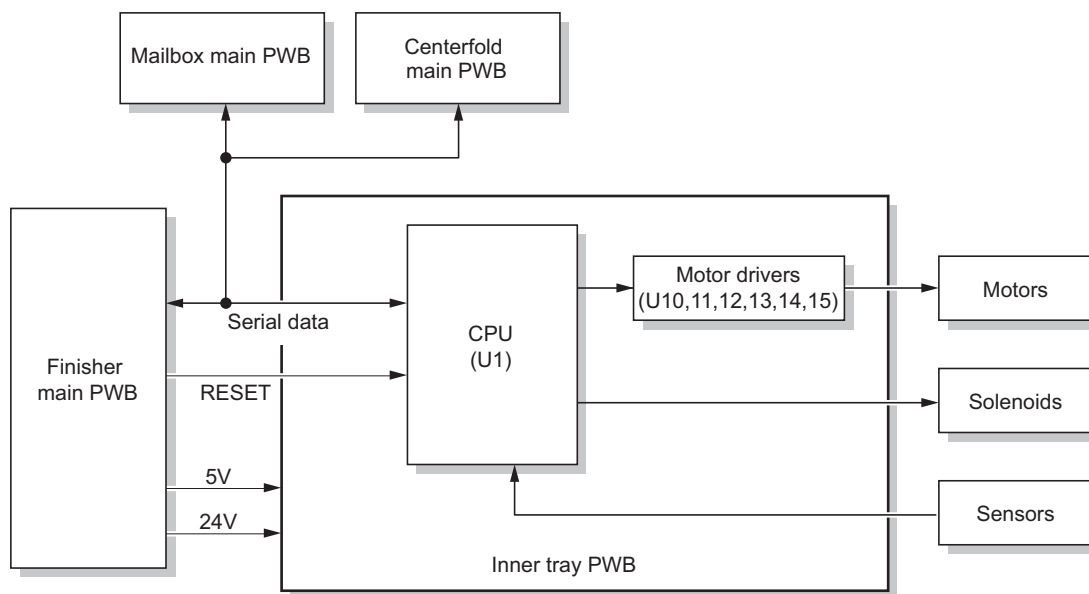


Figure 2-3-3 Inner tray PWB block diagram

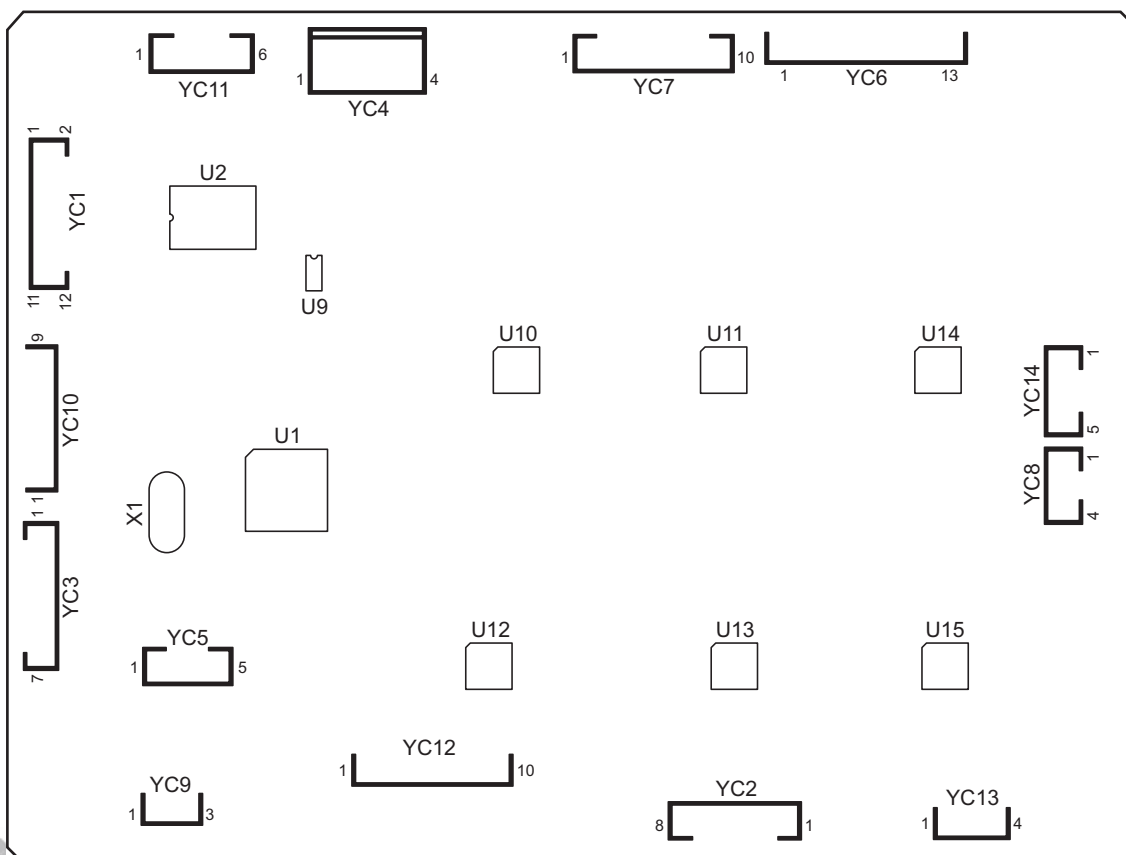
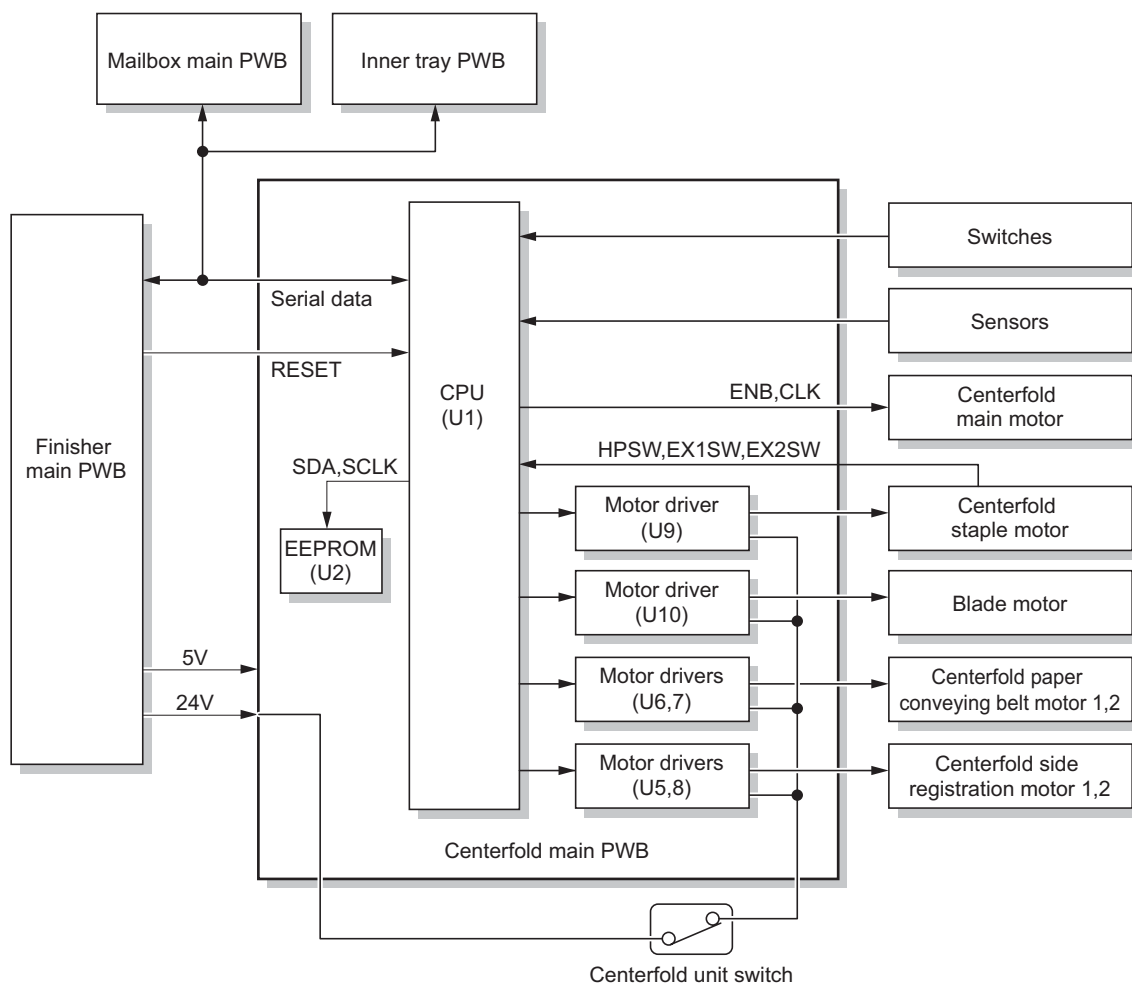


Figure 2-3-4 Inner tray PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the finisher main PWB	1	PES	I	0/5 V DC	PES: On/Off
	2	DETECTION	O	0/5 V DC	ITPWB detection signal
	3	RESET	I	0/5 V DC	ITPWB reset signal
	4	ITPWB SEL	I	0/5 V DC	ITPWB select signal
	5	ITPWB RDY	O	0/5 V DC	ITPWB ready signal
	6	MOT CLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB clock signal
	7	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB serial communication data signal
	8	CLK COUNT ST	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB clock signal
	9	SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB serial communication data signal
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	SCLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	ITPWB clock signal
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
YC2 Connected to the side registration motor 1 and paper conveying belt motor 1	1	SRM1_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SRM1 drive control signal
	2	SRM1 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SRM1 drive control signal
	3	SRM1 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SRM1 drive control signal
	4	SRM1_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SRM1 drive control signal
	5	PCBM1_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCBM1 drive control signal
	6	PCBM1 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCBM1 drive control signal
	7	PCBM1 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCBM1 drive control signal
	8	PCBM1_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCBM1 drive control signal
YC4 Connected to the finisher main PWB	1	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	24VR	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
YC6 Connected to the paddle solenoid, trailing edge holder solenoid 1/2 and Paper conveying belt motor 2	1	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	PDSOL ACT	O	0/24 V DC	PDSOL: On/Off (activate)
	3	PDSOL RET	O	0/24 V DC	PDSOL: On/Off (return)
	4	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	5	TEHSOL1 ACT	O	0/24 V DC	TEHSOL1: On/Off (activate)
	6	TEHSOL1 RET	O	0/24 V DC	TEHSOL1: On/Off (return)
	7	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	8	TEHSOL2 ACT	O	0/24 V DC	TEHSOL2: On/Off (activate)
	9	TEHSOL2 RET	O	0/24 V DC	TEHSOL2: On/Off (return)
	10	PCBM2_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCBM2 drive control signal
	11	PCBM2 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCBM2 drive control signal
	12	PCBM2_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCBM2 drive control signal
	13	PCBM2 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCBM2 drive control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC7 Connected to the relief path motor, relief path solenoid and center-fold feed-shift solenoid	1	RPM_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RPM drive control signal
	2	RPM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RPM drive control signal
	3	RPM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RPM drive control signal
	4	RPM_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RPM drive control signal
	5	RPSOL RET	O	0/24 V DC	RPSOL: On/Off (return)
	6	RPSOL ACT	O	0/24 V DC	RPSOL: On/Off (activate)
	7	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	8	CFSSOL RET	O	0/24 V DC	CFSSOL: On/Off (return)
	9	CFSSOL ACT	O	0/24 V DC	CFSSOL: On/Off (activate)
	10	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC8 Connected to the side registration motor 2	1	SRM2_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SRM2 drive control signal
	2	SRM2 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SRM2 drive control signal
	3	SRM2 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SRM2 drive control signal
	4	SRM2_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SRM2 drive control signal
YC9 Connected to the paper detection sensor 2	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	PDS2	I	0/5 V DC	PDS2: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC10 Connected to the side registration home position sensor 2, paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 and paper detection sensor 1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	SRHPS2	I	0/5 V DC	SRHPS2: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	PCBHPS1	I	0/5 V DC	PCBHPS1: On/Off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	PDS1	I	0/5 V DC	PDS1: On/Off
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC11 Connected to the inner tray paper entry sensor 1/2	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	2	ITPES1	I	0/5 V DC	ITPES1: On/Off
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	5	ITPES2	I	0/5 V DC	ITPES2: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC12	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the paper conveying belt home position sensor 2, side registration home position sensor 1 and paper conveying belt position detection sensor	2	PCBHPS2	I	0/5 V DC	PCBHPS2: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	SRHPS1	I	0/5 V DC	SRHPS1: On/Off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	PCBDS	I	0/5 V DC	PCBDS: On/Off
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
YC13	1	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
Connected to the lock solenoid	2	LSOL ACT	O	0/24 V DC	LSOL: On/Off (activate)
	3	LSOL RET	O	0/24 V DC	LSOL: On/Off (return)
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
YC14	1	PDM_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PDM drive control signal
Connected to the paddle motor	2	PDM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PDM drive control signal
	3	PDM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PDM drive control signal
	4	PDM_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PDM drive control signal
	5	NC	-	-	Not used

2-3-3 Centerfold main PWB**Figure 2-3-5 Centerfold main PWB block diagram**

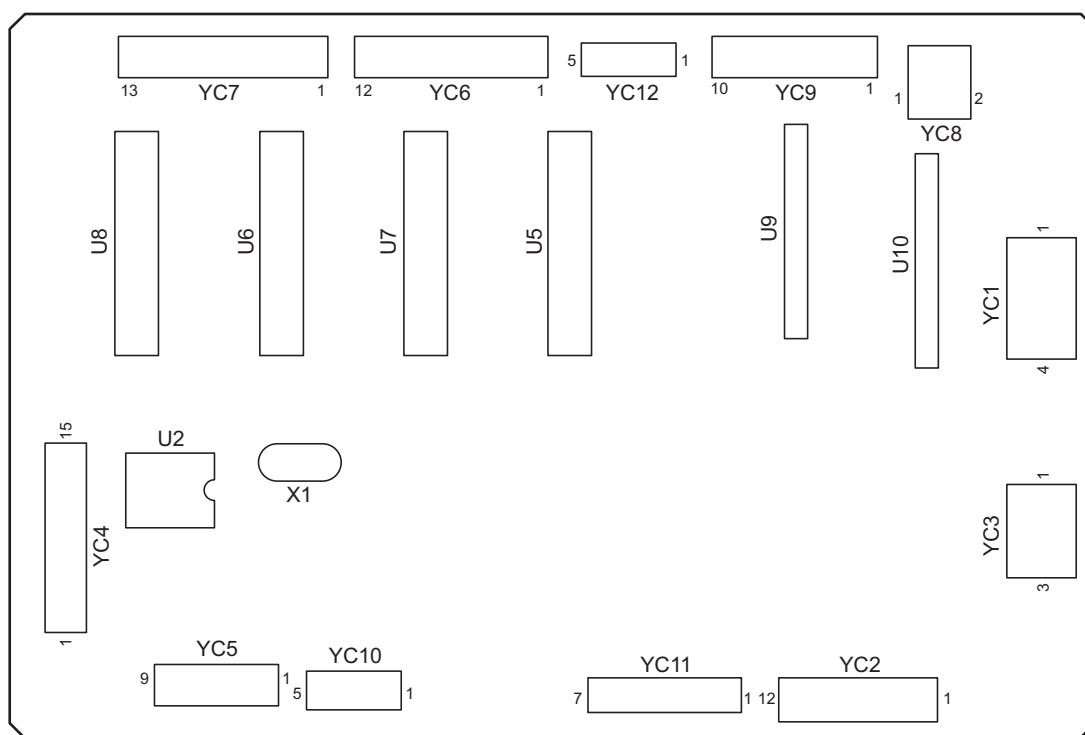


Figure 2-3-6 Centerfold main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the finisher main PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
YC2 Connected to the finisher main PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	DETECTION	O	0/5 V DC	Center-folding unit detection signal
	3	RESET	I	0/5 V DC	Center-folding unit reset signal
	4	CU SEL	I	0/5 V DC	Center-folding unit select signal
	5	CU RDY	O	0/5 V DC	Center-folding unit ready signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Center-folding unit serial communication data signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Center-folding unit serial communication data signal
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	SCLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Center-folding unit clock signal
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
YC3 Connected to the centerfold top cover switch	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	24VR	I	0/24 V DC	CTCSW: On/Off
YC4 Connected to the tray paper detection sensor, centerfold eject switch, blade home position switch, centerfold side registration sensor 1 and centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	TPDS	I	0/5 V DC	TPDS: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	CESW	I	0/5 V DC	CESW: On/Off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	BLHPSW	I	0/5 V DC	BLHPSW: On/Off
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	CSRS1	I	0/5 V DC	CSRS1: On/Off
	12	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	CPCBS1	I	0/5 V DC	CPCBS1: On/Off
	15	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5 Connected to the centerfold paper detection switch, centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 and centerfold side registration sensor 2	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	CPDSW	I	0/5 V DC	CPDSW: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	CPCBS2	I	0/5 V DC	CPCBS2: On/Off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	CSRS2	I	0/5 V DC	CSRS2: On/Off
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC6 Connected to the centerfold side registration motor 2 and centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2	1	CSRM2_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSRM2 drive control signal
	2	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	CSRM2 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSRM2 drive control signal
	4	CSRM2 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSRM2 drive control signal
	5	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	6	CSRM2_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSRM2 drive control signal
	7	CPCBM2_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CPCBM2 drive control signal
	8	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	9	CPCBM2 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CPCBM2 drive control signal
	10	CPCBM2 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CPCBM2 drive control signal
	11	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	12	CPCBM2_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CPCBM2 drive control signal
YC7 Connected to the centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 and centerfold side registration motor 1	1	CPCBM1_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CPCBM1 drive control signal
	2	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	CPCBM1 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CPCBM1 drive control signal
	4	CPCBM1 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CPCBM1 drive control signal
	5	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	6	CPCBM1_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CPCBM1 drive control signal
	7	CSRM1_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSRM1 drive control signal
	8	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	9	CSRM1 A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSRM1 drive control signal
	10	CSRM1 B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSRM1 drive control signal
	11	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	12	CSRM1_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSRM1 drive control signal
	13	NC	-	-	Not used
YC8 Connected to the blade motor	1	BLM FOR	O	0/24 V DC	BLM: On/Off (forward)
	2	BLM REV	O	0/24 V DC	BLM: On/Off (reverse)

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC9 Connected to the centerfold staple motor	1	CSTM-	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSTM drive control signal
	2	CSTM-	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSTM drive control signal
	3	NC	-	-	Not used
	4	CSTM+	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSTM drive control signal
	5	CSTM+	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CSTM drive control signal
	6	STPHPSW	I	0/5 V DC	Centerfold staple STPHPSW signal
	7	STPEX1	I	0/5 V DC	Centerfold staple STPEX1 signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	STPEX2	I	0/5 V DC	Centerfold staple STPEX2 signal
	10	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC12 Connected to the centerfold main motor	1	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	CMM ENB	O	0/24 V DC	CMM enable signal
	4	CMM LD	I	0/5 V DC	CMM LD signal
	5	CMM CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CMM clock signal
YC13 Connected to the centerfold paper entry sensor	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	CPES	O	0/24 V DC	CPES: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output

2-3-4 Mailbox main PWB

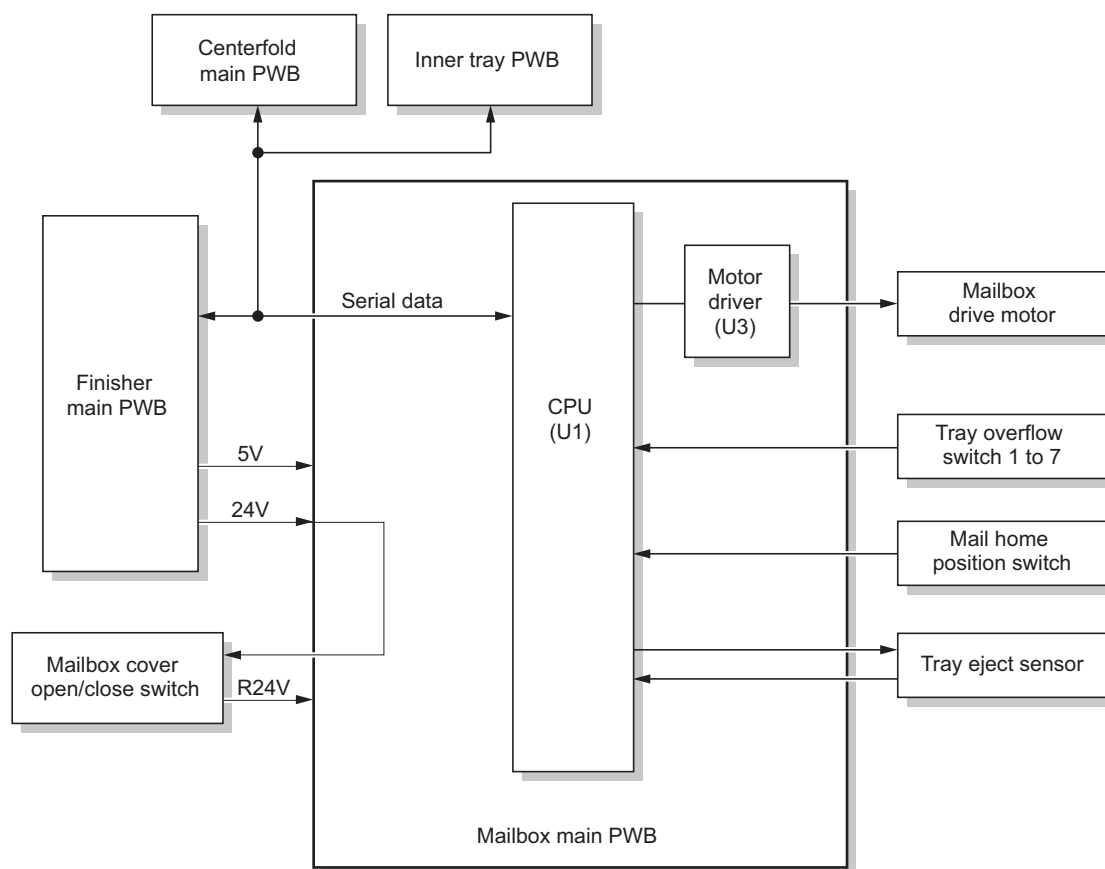


Figure 2-3-7 Mailbox main PWB block diagram

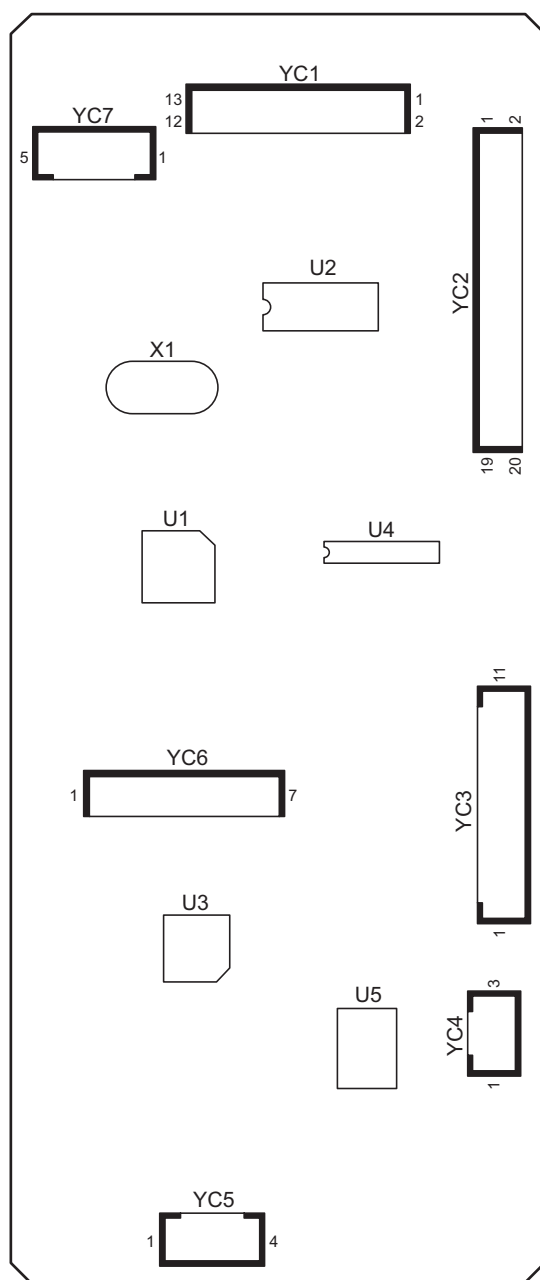


Figure 2-3-8 Mailbox main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the tray overflow switch 1 to 5 and tray eject sensor	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	OFS1	I	0/5 V DC	TOFSW1: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	OFS2	I	0/5 V DC	TOFSW2: On/Off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	OFS3	I	0/5 V DC	TOFSW3: On/Off
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	OFS4	I	0/5 V DC	TOFSW4: On/Off
	12	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	OFS5	I	0/5 V DC	TOFSW5: On/Off
	15	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	16	LED	O	0/5 V DC	LED signal
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	TEJS	I	5/0 V DC (pulse) /0 V DC	TEJS: Off/On (receiving)
	19	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC2 Connected to the tray eject sensor, mail home position switch and tray overflow switch 6/7	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	2	LED	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	TEJS (emitting)
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	HP SIG	I	0/5 V DC	MPESW: On/Off
	5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	OFS6	I	0/5 V DC	TOFSW6: On/Off
	8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	OFS7	I	0/5 V DC	TOFSW7: On/Off
	11	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	NC	-	-	Not used
	14	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC3 Connected to the finisher main PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	5	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	6	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	7	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Mailbox serial communication data signal
	8	SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Mailbox serial communication data signal
	9	SCLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Mailbox clock signal
	10	SEL	I	0/5 V DC	Mailbox select signal
	11	READY	O	0/5 V DC	Mailbox ready signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4 Connected to the mail-box cover open/close switch	1	R24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	3	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC5 Connected to the mail-box drive motor	1	MOTOR _A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MBDM drive control signal
	2	MOTOR A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MBDM drive control signal
	3	MOTOR B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MBDM drive control signal
	4	MOTOR _B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MBDM drive control signal

Maintenance parts list

Finisher

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Right sub tray eject roller	ROLLER CONVEYING A	303JY24020	3JY24020	11	23
Right sub tray feed roller	ROLLER CONVEYING B	303JY24030	3JY24030	11	31
Paper conveying roller	ROLLER CONVEYING C	303JY24040	3JY24040	12	22
Left sub tray eject roller	ROLLER CONVEYING D	303JY24050	3JY24050	12	49
Inner tray paper entry roller	ROLLER CONVEYING E	303JY24250	3JY24250	12	23
Upper paper entry roller	ROLLER FEED LOW	303JY24310	3JY24310	11	26
Pressure roller A/D	ROLLER PRESS LOW	303JY24930	3JY24930	12	26
Eject roller	ROLLER MAIN EJECT	303JY28120	3JY28120	4	30
Inner tray paper conveying roller	ROLLER MT	303JY36200	3JY36200	10	5
Centerfold paper conveying roller	ROLLER SADDLE CONVEYING	303JY38080	3JY38080	2	32
Eject pulley	PULLEY,FEEDBACK	62221110	-	3	14
Sub tray eject static eliminator	STATIC ELIMINATOR SUB EJECT	3B816920	-	3	20
Sub tray eject static eliminator	STATIC ELIMINATOR SUB EJECT	3B816920	-	12	55
Eject static eliminator	STATIC ELIMINATOR EJECT	3HX21040	-	1	23
Sub static eliminator	STATIC ELIMINATOR SUB C	303JY24820	3JY24820	11	8
Cursor static eliminator	STATIC ELIMINATOR CURSOR	303JY37220	3JY37220	5,7	10,17
Guide static eliminator	STATIC ELIMINATOR GUIDE	303JY37250	3JY37250	10	42
Relief path solenoid lever	LEVER SOL MT A	303JY37600	3JY37600	10	20
Relief path solenoid mount	MOUNT SOL MT A	303JY37610	3JY37610	10	19
Gear 51	GEAR 51	3AK20090	-	4	37
Worm gear	GEAR,WORM MAIN TRAY	3AK20130	-	5	2
Worm gear	GEAR,WORM MAIN TRAY	3AK20130	-	13	5
Forwarding roller sheet	SHEET,LEADING FEED ROLLER	3B807820	-	8	2
Main tray upper limit detection sensor	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	2	25
Main tray middle position detection sensor	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	2	25
Main tray lower limit detection sensor	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	2	25
Paper holder home position sensor	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	4	15
Staple home position switch 1	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	5	26
Staple home position switch 2	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	5	26
Paper conveying belt position detection sensor	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	6	5
Side registration home position sensor 1	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	7	5
Side registration home position sensor 2	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	7	5
Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	7	5
Centerfold set switch	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	14	13
Eject switch 1	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	3	10
Paper detection sensor 1	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	7	9
Paper detection sensor 2	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	7	9
Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	7	9
Inner tray paper entry sensor 2	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	8	31
Inner tray paper entry sensor 1	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	10	2

Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1	SENSOR A,SEPARATION	303H327460	3H327460	2	34
Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 2	SENSOR B SEPARATION	303H327470	3H327470	2	35
Paper entry sensor	SENSOR FEED B	303H327500	3H327500	11	33
Punch waste box sensor	SENSOR TANK	3H427050	-	2	47
Centerfold paper conveying sensor	SWITCH REGISTRATION	2FG27110	-	2	52

Center-folding unit (option)

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Centerfold eject roller	ROLLER EJECT	303J124280	3J124280	3	24
Centerfold paper entry roller	ROLLER SWICHBACK	303J124430	3J124430	2	16
Paper ejecting brush	BRUSH PAPER EJECT REGISTRATION	3CA16210	-	3	22
Eject pulley	PULLEY,FEEDBACK	62221110	-	4	34
Paper conveying pulley	PULLEY FEED IN	303J124610	3J124610	2	51
Centerfold right roller	PARTS ROLLER PRESS A	303LV94010	3LV94010	3	9
Centerfold left roller	PARTS ROLLER PRESS B	303LV94020	3LV94020	3	10
Centerfold blade	BLADE MID PRESSING	303J124140	3J124140	2	27
Centerfold eject switch	SWITCH FEED	2FB27050	-	2	8
Blade home position switch	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	1	53
Centerfold side registration sensor 1	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	1	53
Centerfold side registration sensor 2	SENSOR 248NL1	2C927210	-	1	53
Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1	SENSOR CONVEYING	3H327410	-	1	28
Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2	SENSOR CONVEYING	3H327410	-	1	28
Centerfold paper entry sensor	SWITCH REGISTRATION	2FG27110	-	2	61
Tray paper detection sensor	SENSOR TRAY	303J145010	3J145010	2	13
Centerfold paper detection switch	SENSOR TANK	3H427050	-	3	4

Mailbox (option)

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Paper conveying roller	PARTS ROLLER CONVEYING	303LW94010	3LW94010	2	16
Eject roller	PARTS ROLLER EJECT A	303LW94020	3LW94020	2	13
Eject roller	PARTS ROLLER EJECT C	303LW94030	3LW94030	2	14

Punch unit (option)

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Drive cum gear 40	GEAR 40 CAM DRIVE	3H416110	-	1	4
Idle gear 16/51	GEAR 16-51 IDLE	3H416120	-	1	5

Periodic maintenance procedures

Finisher

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Exterior	Overall exterior cover and tray	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed and conveying section	Right sub tray eject roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Right sub tray feed roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Paper conveying roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Inner tray paper entry roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Left sub tray eject roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Upper paper entry roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Pressure roller A/D	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Inner tray paper conveying roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Centerfold paper conveying roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject pulley	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Sub tray eject static eliminator	Check	Every service	If paper powder or dust adheres to tip of brush, remove it.	
	Eject static eliminator	Check	Every service	If paper powder or dust adheres to tip of brush, remove it.	
	Sub static eliminator	Check	Every service	If paper powder or dust adheres to tip of brush, remove it.	
	Cursor static eliminator	Check	Every service	If paper powder or dust adheres to tip of brush, remove it.	
	Guide static eliminator	Check	Every service	If paper powder or dust adheres to tip of brush, remove it.	
	Relief path solenoid lever	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L, 50G.	
	Relief path solenoid mount	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L, 50G.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Driving section	Gear 51	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L, 50G to teeth.	
	Worm gear	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L, 50G to teeth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Inner tray section	Forwarding roller sheet	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Sensors	Main tray upper limit detection sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Main tray middle position detection sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Main tray lower limit detection sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Paper holder home position sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Staple home position switch 1	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Staple home position switch 2	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Paper conveying belt position detection sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Side registration home position sensor 1	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Side registration home position sensor 2	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold set switch	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Eject switch 1	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Eject switch 2	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Eject switch 3	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Paper detection sensor 1	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Paper detection sensor 2	Clean	Every service	Air brush	

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Sensors	Inner tray paper entry sensor 1	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Inner tray paper entry sensor 2	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 2	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Paper entry sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Punch waste box sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold paper conveying sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	

Center-folding unit (option)

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Exterior	Overall exterior cover and tray	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed and conveying section	Centerfold eject roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Centerfold paper entry roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Paper ejecting brush	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject pulley	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Paper conveying pulley	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Centerfold section	Centerfold right roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Centerfold left roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Centerfold blade	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. If deformed or bent, replace.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Sensors	Centerfold eject switch	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Blade home position switch	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold side registration sensor 1	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold side registration sensor 2	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold paper entry sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Tray paper detection sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold paper detection switch	Clean	Every service	Air brush	

Mailbox (option)

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Exterior	Overall exterior cover and tray	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

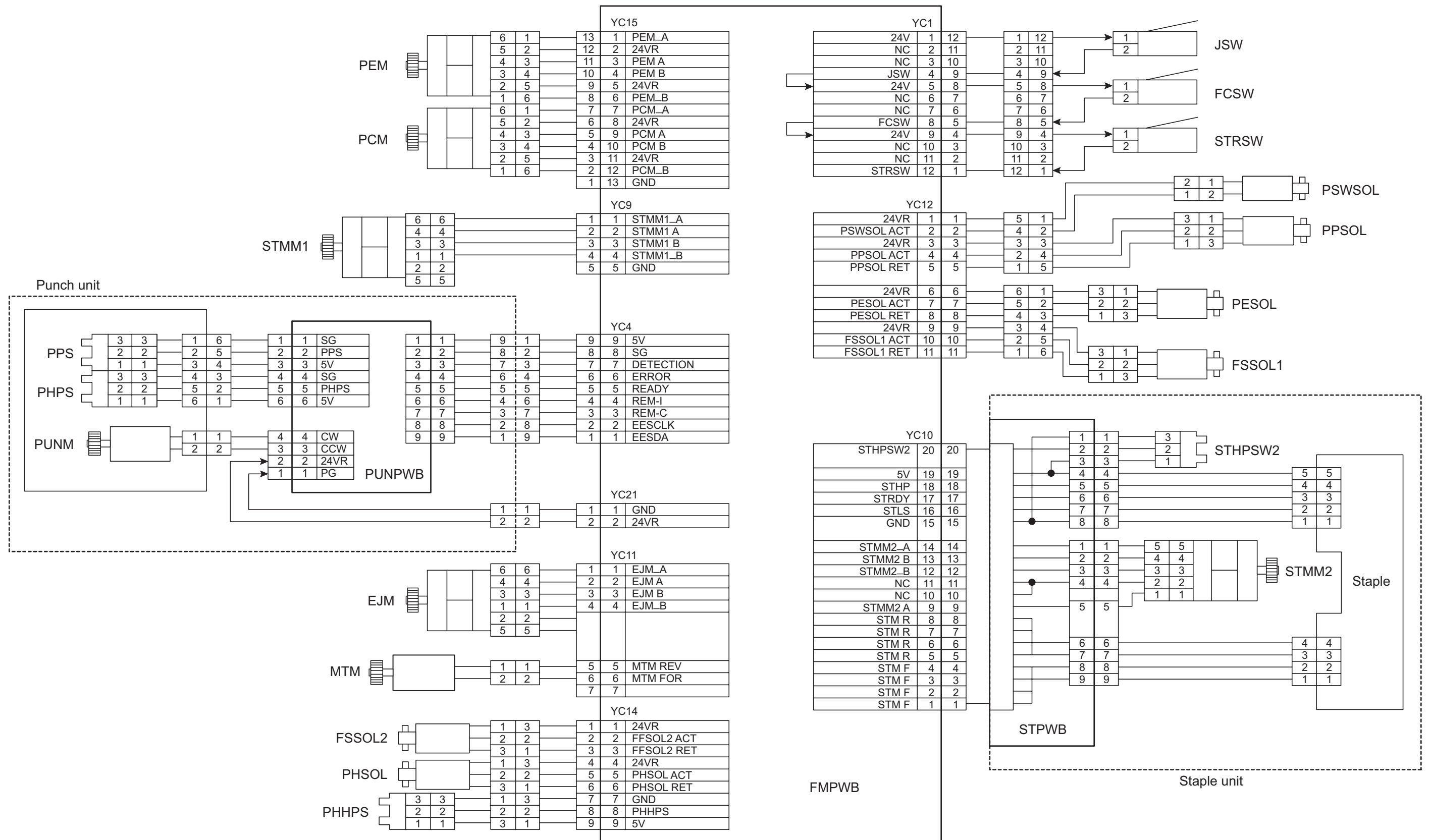


Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper conveying section	Paper conveying roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

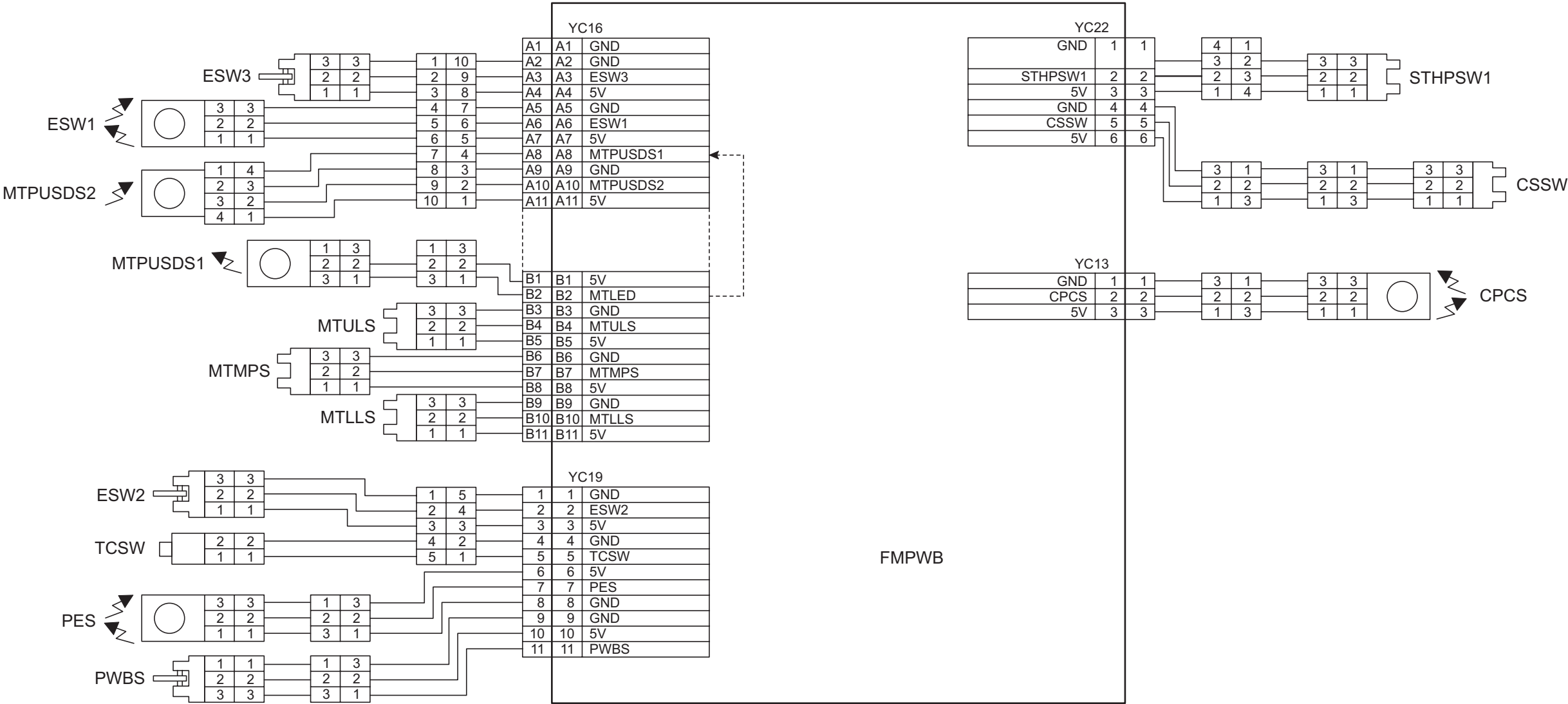
Punch unit (option)

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Driving section	Drive cum gear 40	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50LS to teeth.	
	Idle gear 16/51	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50LS to teeth.	

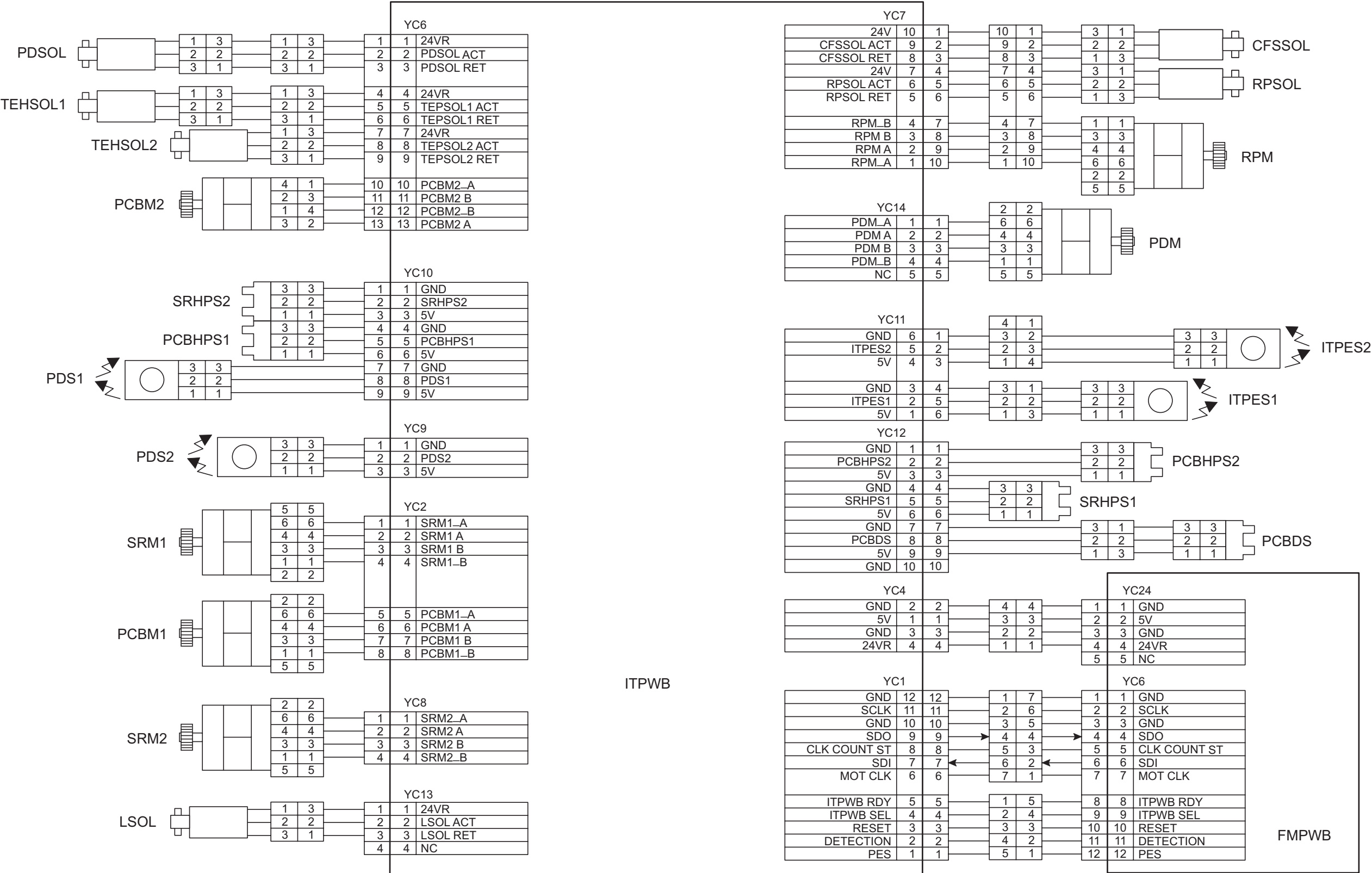
Wiring diagram No. 1



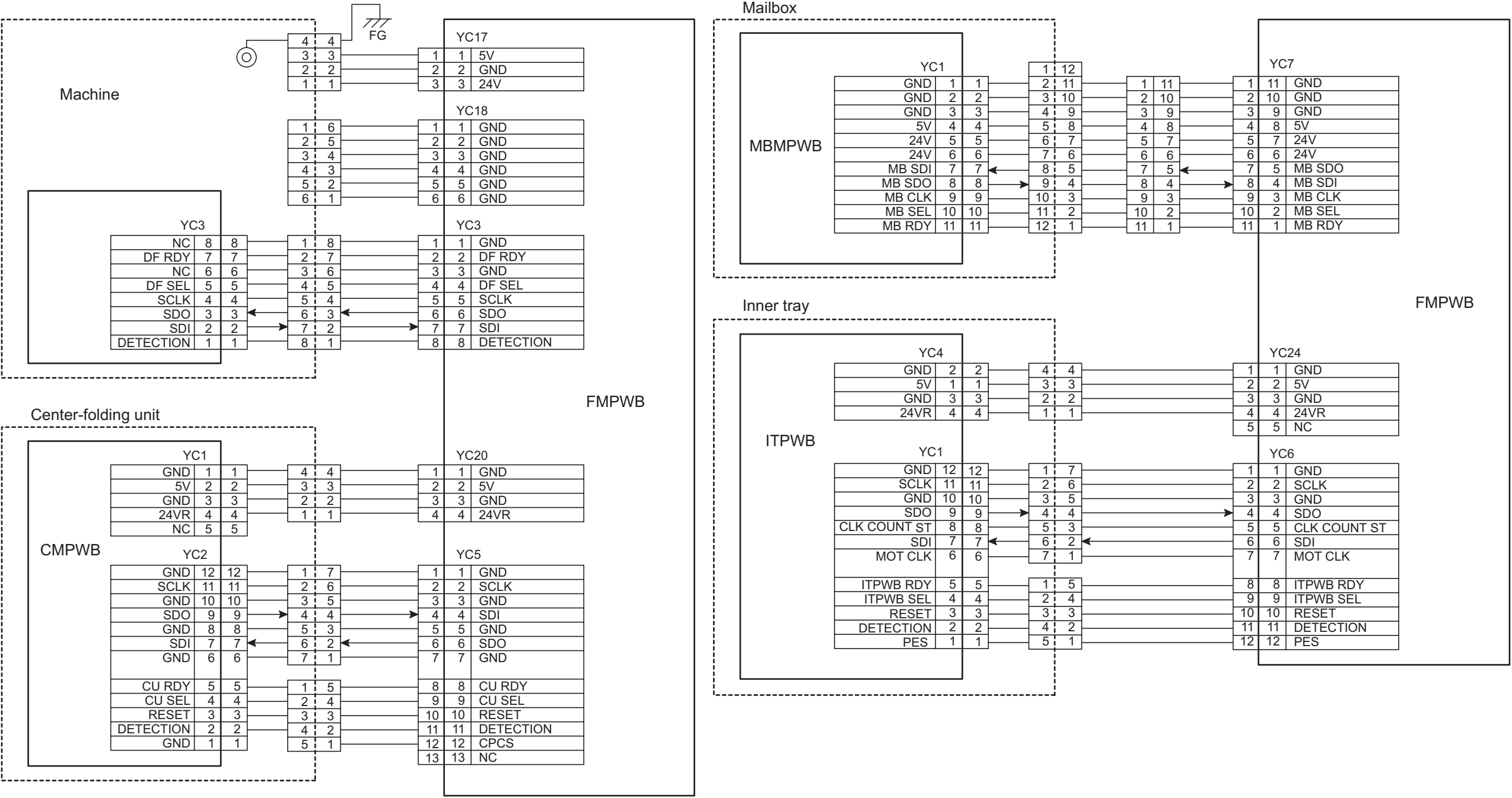
Wiring diagram No. 2



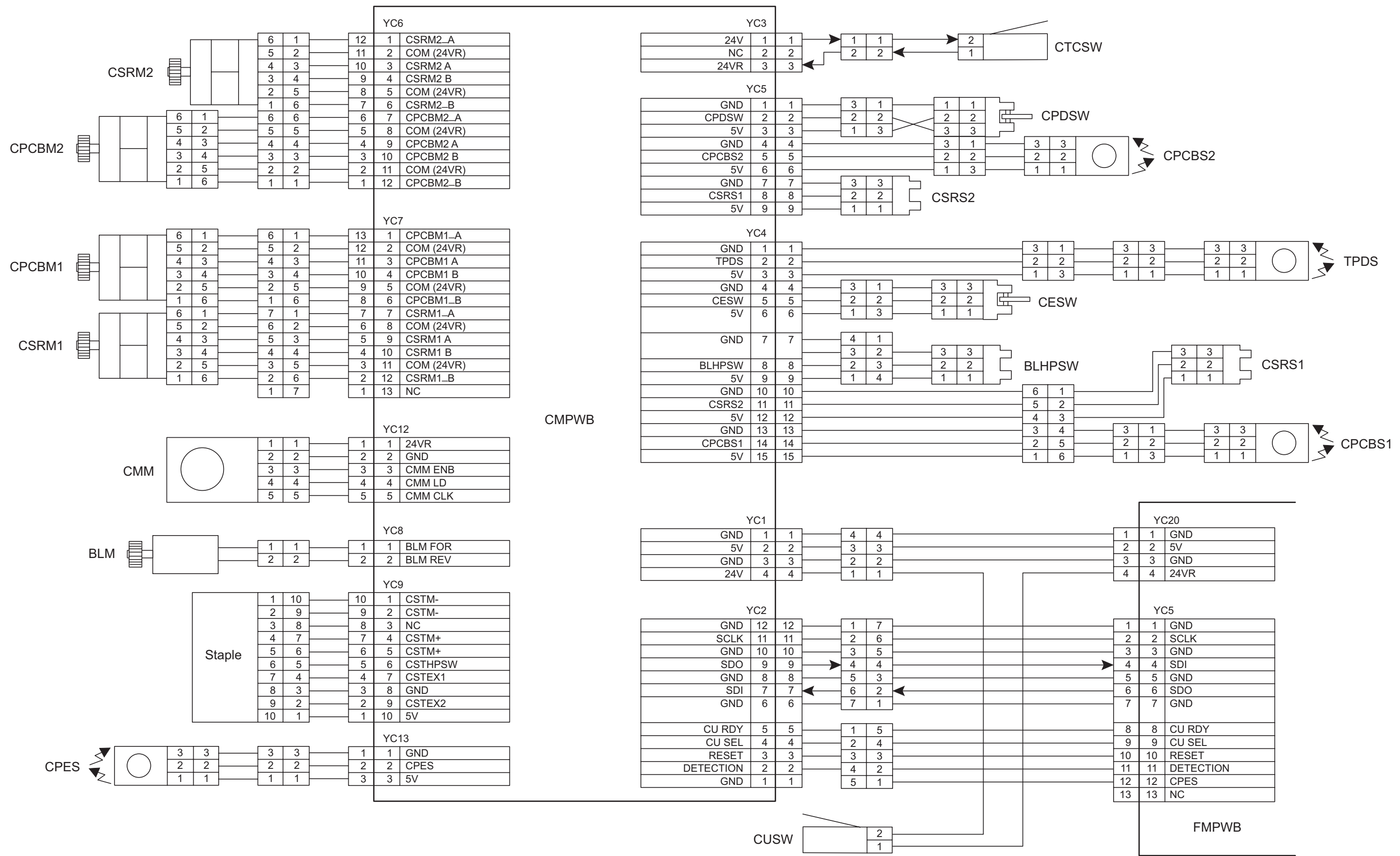
Wiring diagram No.3



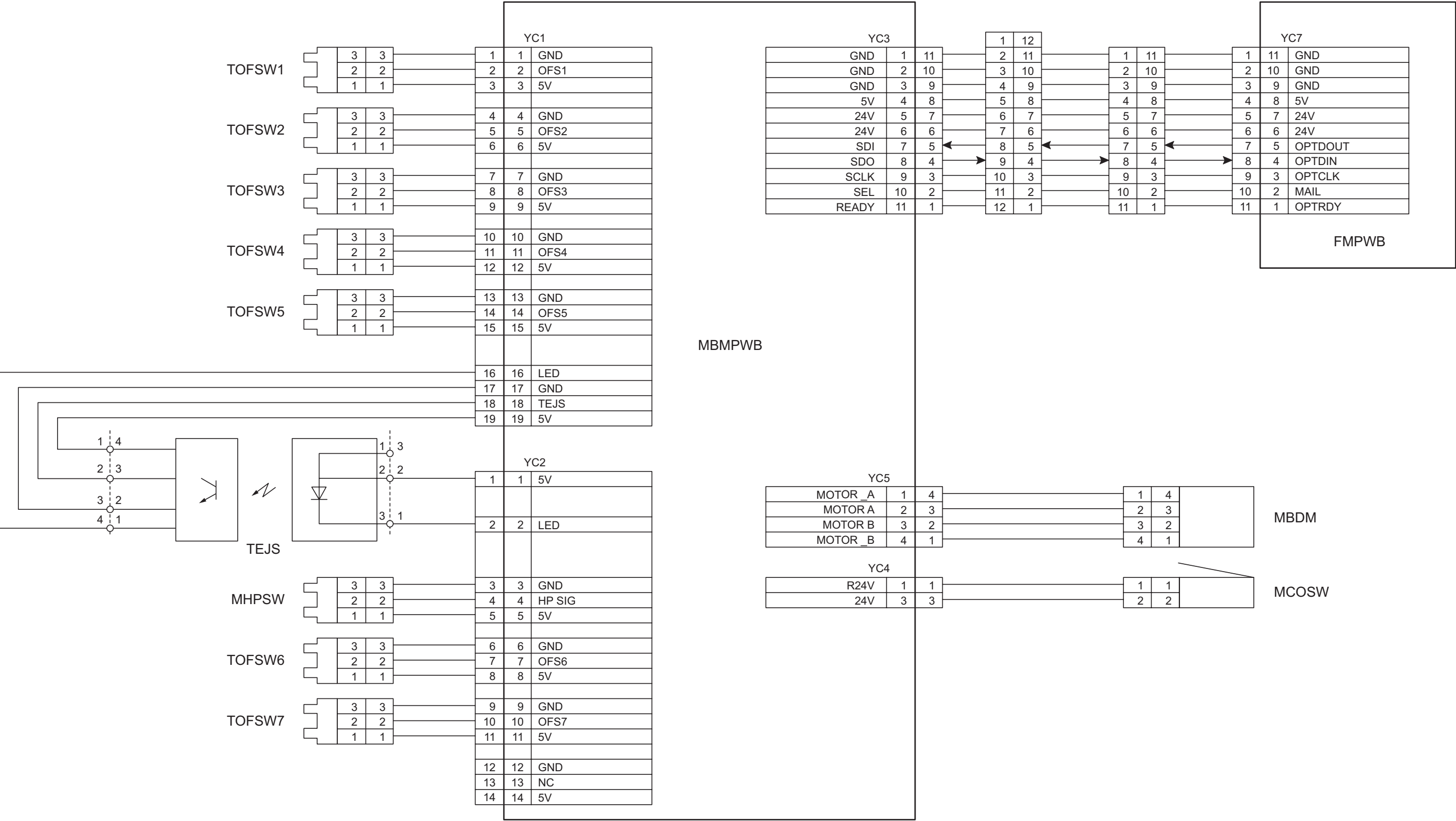
Wiring diagram No. 4



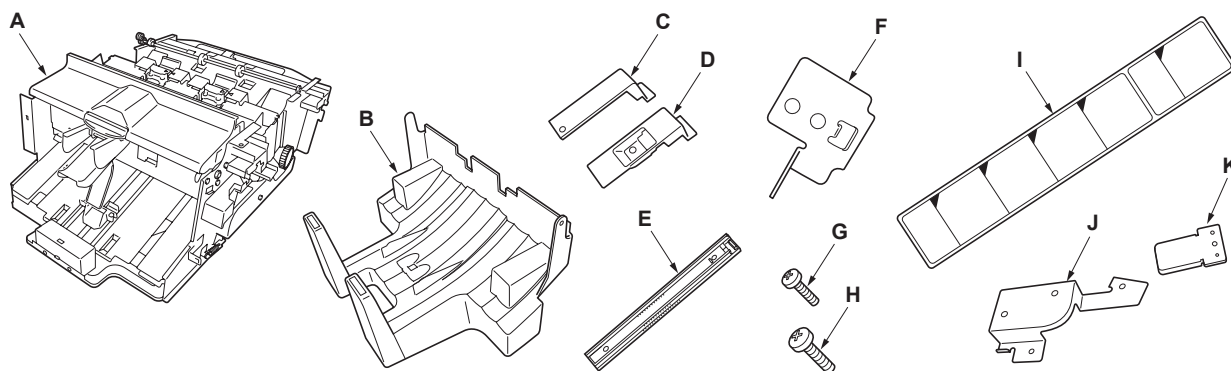
Wiring diagram No. 5



Wiring diagram No. 6



INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR CENTER-FOLDING UNIT



English

Supplied parts

A Center-Folding unit	1
B Folding tray	1
C Rear cover	1
D Front cover	1
E Slider	2

F Douser	1
G M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw	2
H M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw	11
I Label	1
J Cover handle saddle	1
K Cover V	2

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Plieuse	1
B Bac de pliage	1
C Capot arrière	1
D Capot avant	1
E Règle	2

F Ombreur	1
G Vis P taraudées M3 × 8	2
H Vis S taraudées M4 × 8	11
I Etiquette	1
J Poignée de capot à cheval	1
K Capot V	2

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Unidad de plegado	1
B Bandeja de plegado	1
C Cubierta posterior	1
D Cubierta frontal	1
E Deslizador	2

F Pantalla paraluz	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8	2
H Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8	11
I Etiqueta	1
J Placa de manilla de cubierta	1
K Cubierta V	2

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Mittenfalteinheit	1
B Faltfach	1
C Hintere Abdeckung	1
D Vordere Abdeckung	1
E Schieber	2

F Abschirmung	1
G M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben	2
H M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben	11
I Aufkleber	1
J Abdeckungsalter	1
K Abdeckung V	2

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Unità di piegatura centrale	1
B Vassoio di piegatura	1
C Pannello posteriore	1
D Pannello anteriore	1
E Scivolo	2

F Dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser)	1
G Viti con testa a croce P M3 × 8	2
H Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8	11
I Etichetta	1
J Slitta coprimanopola	1
K Pannello V	2

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属部件

A 中缝装订—折页单元	1
B 折叠托盘	1
C 后盖板	1
D 前盖板	1
E 滑板	2

F 探测器	1
G M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉	2
H M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	11
I 标签	1
J 盖板手柄鞍座	1
K 盖板 V	2

如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

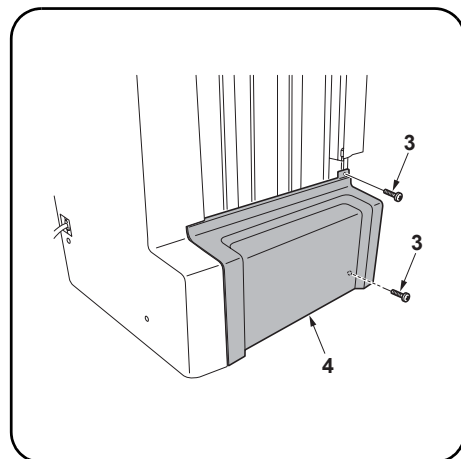
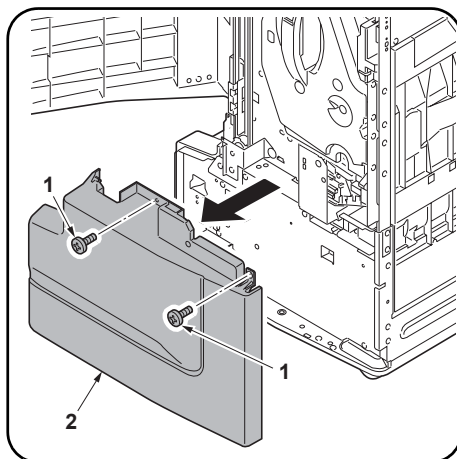
日本語

同梱品

A 中折りユニット	1
B 中折りトレイ	1
C カバー後	1
D カバー前	1
E スライダー	2

F 遮光板	1
G ビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P	2
H ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S	11
I ラベル	1
J カバーハンドルサドル	1
K カバーV	2

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



Procedure

Before installing the center-folding unit, turn the MFP's main power switch off and unplug the power cable from the power supply. Install the document finisher, and then install the center-folding unit.

Removing the cover.

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher.
2. Remove two screws (1) and remove lower front cover (2).

3. Remove two screws (3) and remove lower left cover (4).

Procédure

Avant d'installer la plieuse mettre l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise de courant. Installer le finisseur de document, puis installer la plieuse.

Enlèvement du capot.

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer deux vis (1) et retirer le capot avant inférieur (2).

3. Retirer deux vis (3) et retirer le capot gauche inférieur (4).

Procedimiento

Antes de instalar la unidad de plegado, desconecte el interruptor de alimentación principal de la MFP y desenchufe el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la unidad de plegado.

Extracción de la cubierta.

1. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (1) y la cubierta frontal inferior (2).

3. Quite dos tornillos (3) y la cubierta inferior izquierda (4).

Verfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Mittenfalteinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Mittenfalteinheit an.

Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (1) und danach die vordere untere Abdeckung (2).

3. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (3) und danach die linke untere Abdeckung (4).

Procedura

Prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa. Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di piegatura centrale.

Rimuovere il pannello.

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice.
2. Togliere due viti (1) e rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (2).

3. Togliere due viti (3) e rimuovere il pannello inferiore sinistro (4).

安装步骤

安装中缝装订一折页单元前, 请关闭 MFP 的主电源开关并从电源拔下电源线。安装文档整理器, 然后安装中缝装订一折页单元。

拆下盖板。

1. 打开文档整理器的前盖板。
2. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1), 然后拆下前下盖板 (2)。

3. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (3), 然后拆下左下盖板 (4)。

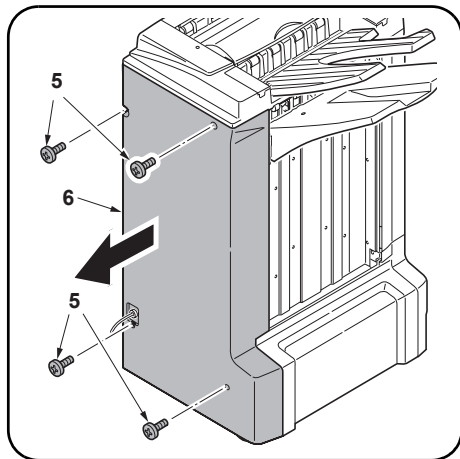
取付手順

中折りユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、中折りユニットを設置すること。

カバーの取り外し

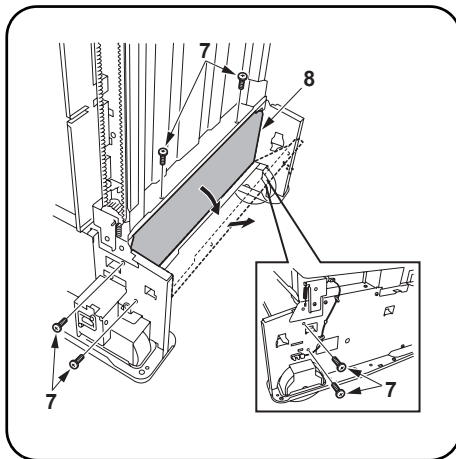
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開く。
2. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、前下カバー (2) を取り外す。

3. ビス (3) 2 本を外し、左下カバー (4) を取り外す。



Removing the back cover.

4. Remove the four screws (5) to remove the back cover (6) from the document finisher.



Removing the reinforcing plate.

5. Remove six screws (7) to remove the left reinforcing plate (8). Tilt the left reinforcing plate (8) to pull out upwards.

Installing the back cover.

6. Use the four screws (5) which was removed from the document finisher in step 4 and reinstall the back cover (6).

Enlèvement du capot arrière.

4. Retirer les quatre vis (5) pour retirer le capot arrière (6) du finisseur de document.

Enlèvement de la plaque de renfort.

5. Retirer six vis (7) pour retirer la plaque de renfort de gauche (8). Incliner la plaque de renfort de gauche (8) pour la faire ressortir vers le haut.

Installation du capot arrière.

6. Utiliser les quatre vis (5) retirées du finisseur de document à l'étape 4 et réinstaller le capot arrière (6).

Extracción de la cubierta posterior.

4. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) para quitar la cubierta posterior (6) del finalizador de documentos.

Extracción de la placa de refuerzo.

5. Quite seis tornillos (7) para quitar la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8). Incline la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8) para sacarla hacia arriba.

Instalación de la cubierta posterior.

6. Utilice los cuatro tornillos (5) que fueron quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 4 y vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (6).

Entfernen der hinteren Abdeckung.

4. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) vom Dokument-Finisher, um die hintere Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.

Entfernen der Verstärkungsplatte.

5. Entfernen Sie die sechs Schrauben (7), um die linke Verstärkungsplatte (8) auszubauen. Neigen Sie die Verstärkungsplatte (8), um sie nach außen herauszuziehen.

Anbringen der hinteren Abdeckung.

6. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (5), welche im Schritt 4 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurden, und bringen Sie danach die hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder an.

Rimuovere il pannello posteriore.

4. Togliere le quattro viti (5) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (6) dalla finitrice.

Rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo.

5. Togliere sei viti (7) per rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8). Inclinare la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8) ed estrarla verso l'alto.

Installare il pannello posteriore.

6. Utilizzare le quattro viti (5) rimosse dalla finitrice nel passo 4 e reinstallare il pannello posteriore (6).

拆下后盖板。

4. 从文档整理器上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (5) 以便拆下后盖板 (6)。

拆下加强板。

5. 拆下 6 颗螺钉 (7) 以便拆下左加强板 (8)。将左加强板 (8) 倾斜向上拉出。

安装后盖板。

6. 用在步骤 4 中从文档整理器上拆下的 4 颗螺钉 (5) 重新安装后盖板 (6)。

後カバーの取り外し

4. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、後カバー (6) を取り外す。

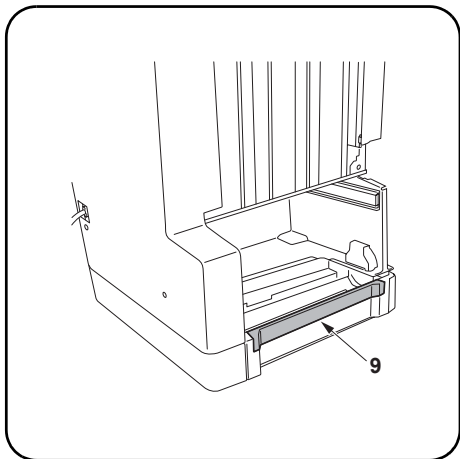
www.tonerplus.com.ua

補強板の取り外し

5. ビス (7) 6 本を外し、補強板左 (8) を取り外す。補強板左 (8) は斜めに傾け、上方向へ取り外すこと。

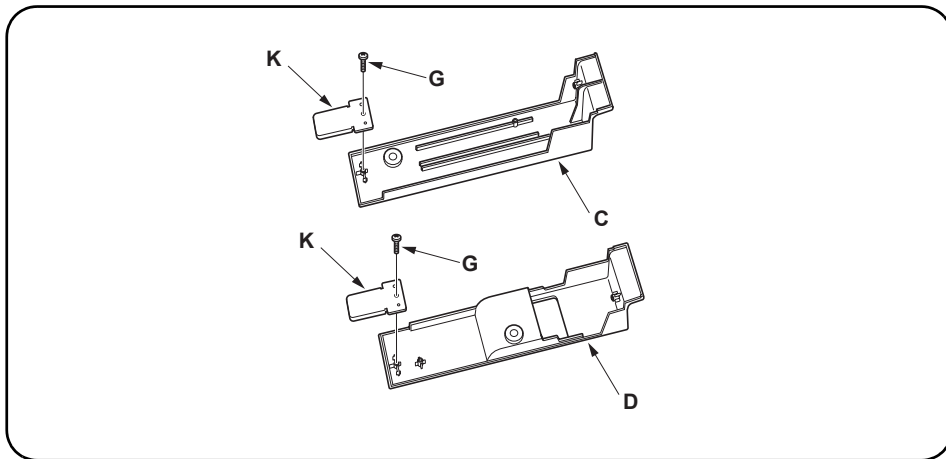
後カバーの取り付け

6. 手順 4 で外した後カバー (6) をビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。



Removing the divided part.

7. Cut out the divided part (9).



Reassembling the covers.

8. Install cover V (K) onto each of rear cover (C) and front cover (D) respectively with a M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (G).

Enlèvement de la pièce divisée.

7. Découper la pièce divisée (9).

Remontage des capots.

8. Installer le capot V (K) sur le capot arrière (C) et sur le capot avant (D) à l'aide d'une vis P taraudée M3 × 8 chaque (G).

Extracción de la parte dividida.

7. Corte la parte dividida (9).

Reinstalación de las cubiertas.

8. Instale la cubierta V (K) en cada cubierta posterior (C) y cubierta frontal (D) respectivamente con un tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 (G).

Entfernen der Abtrennung.

7. Die Abtrennung (9) ausschneiden.

Anbringen der Abdeckungen.

8. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung V (K) auf jede hintere Abdeckung (C) bzw. vordere Abdeckung (D) mit einer M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (G) an.

Rimuovere la parte divisa.

7. Tagliare via la parte divisa (9).

Riassemblare i pannelli.

8. Installare il pannello V (K) su ognuno dei pannelli posteriore (C) e anteriore (D) rispettivamente con viti con testa a croce P M4 × 8 (G).

取下分离部分。

7. 切割已被分开的部件 (9)。

重新组装盖板。

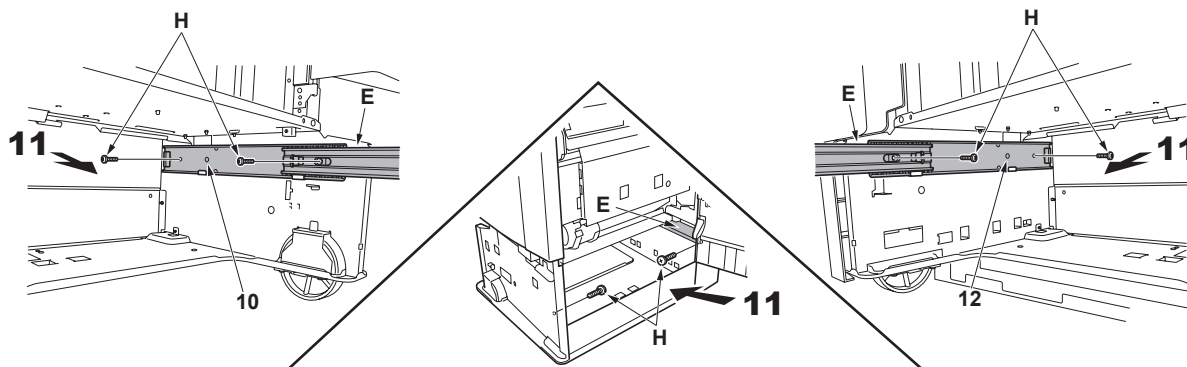
8. 分别用 1 颗 M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 (G) 将盖板 V (K) 安装到每个后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D) 上。

割部を取り除く

7. 割部 (9) を切り取る。

カバーの組み立て

8. カバー後 (C) とカバー前 (D) に、カバー V (K) をビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P (G) 1 本でそれぞれ取り付ける。



Installing the slider.

9. Align slider (E) with projection (10) on the front-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.
10. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H). To tighten the screw at the rear side of slider (E) easily, open the right cover of the document finisher and secure the screw from the right side (11) of the document finisher.

11. Align slider (E) with projection (12) on the back-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.

12. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

Installation de la règle.

9. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (10) de la plaque avant du finisseur de document et installer la règle.
10. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H). Pour pouvoir serrer facilement la vis à l'arrière de la règle (E), ouvrir le capot de droite du finisseur de document et fixer la vis depuis le côté droit (11) du finisseur de document.

11. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (12) à l'arrière de la plaque latérale du finisseur de document et installer la règle.

12. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

Instalación del deslizador.

9. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (10) de la placa del lado frontal del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.
10. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H). Para apretar fácilmente el tornillo del lado posterior del deslizador (E), abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y asegure el tornillo desde el lado derecho (11) del finalizador de documentos.

11. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (12) de la placa del lado posterior del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.

12. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

Anbringen des Schiebers.

9. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (10) auf der vorderen Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.
10. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H). Um die Schraube auf der Rückseite des Schiebers (E) ohne Problems festzuziehen, öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und ziehen Sie die Schraube von der rechten Seite (11) des Dokument-Finishers her an.

11. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (12) auf der hinteren Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.

12. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit zwei M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H).

Installare lo scivolo.

9. Installare lo scivolo (E) allineandolo alla parte sporgente (10) sulla lastra anteriore della finitrice.
10. Fare uscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H). Per fissare con facilità la vite alla parte posteriore dello scivolo (E), aprire il pannello destro della finitrice e serrare la vite dal lato destro (11) della finitrice.

11. Allineare lo scivolo (E) alla parte sporgente (12) sulla lastra posteriore della finitrice e installarlo.

12. Far fuoriuscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

安裝滑板。

9. 將滑板 (E) 與文檔整理器前側板上的突出部 (10) 對齊並重新安裝滑板。
10. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 顆 M4 x 8 攻絲緊固型 S 螺釘 (H) 固定。若要輕鬆拧紧滑板 (E) 後部的螺釘，打開文檔整理器的右蓋板並從文檔整理器右側 (11) 固定螺釘。

11. 將滑板 (E) 與文檔整理器後側板上的突出部 (12) 對齊並重新安裝滑板。

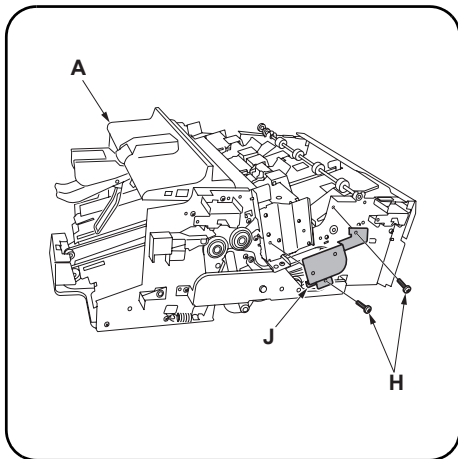
12. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 顆 M4 x 8 攻絲緊固型 S 螺釘 (H) 固定。

スライダの取り付け

9. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャー前側板の突起 (10) に合わせて取り付ける。
10. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。スライダ (E) 後側のビスは、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの右カバーを開き、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの右方向 (11) から作業すると締めやすい。

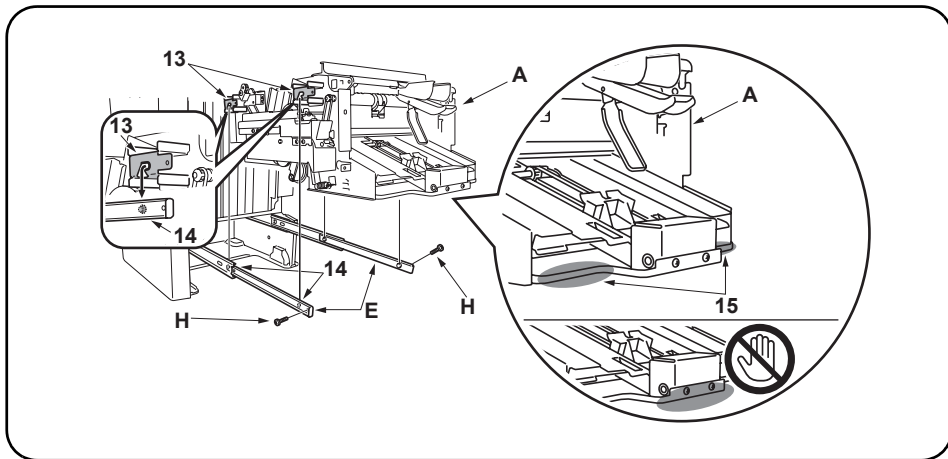
11. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャー後側板の突起 (12) に合わせて取り付ける。

12. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。



Installing the cover handle saddle.

13. Install cover handle saddle (J) on the front side of center-folding unit (A) with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).



Installing the center-folding unit.

14. Pull out sliders (E) till they stop.
 15. Align pawl (13) of center-folding unit (A) with projection (14) of slider (E) and place the center-folding unit onto the slider.
Be sure to hold both the rear bottom and front side (15) of center-folding unit (A) and place the unit onto slider (E).
 16. Secure center-folding unit (A) with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

Installation de la poignée de capot à cheval.

13. Installer la poignée de capot à cheval (J) sur l'avant de la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

Installation de la plieuse.

14. Faire ressortir les règles (E) jusqu'à ce qu'elles s'arrêtent.
 15. Aligner le cliquet (13) de la plieuse (A) sur la saillie (14) de la règle (E) et mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle.
Veiller à tenir le fond arrière et l'avant (15) de la plieuse (A) et à mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle (E).
 16. Fixer la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

Instalación de la placa de manilla de cubierta.

13. Instale la placa de manilla de cubierta (J) en el lado frontal de la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

Instalación de la unidad de plegado.

14. Saque los deslizadores (E) hasta que se paren.
 15. Alinee el trinquete (13) de la unidad de plegado (A) con el resalto (14) del deslizador (E) y coloque la unidad de plegado en el deslizador.
Asegúrese de sujetar el lado inferior posterior y el central (15) de la unidad de plegado (A) y colocar la unidad en el deslizador (E).
 16. Asegure la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

Anbringen des Abdeckungshalters.

13. Bringen Sie den Abdeckungshalter (J) auf der Vorderseite der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) an.

Anbringen der Mittenfalteinheit.

14. Ziehen Sie die Schieber (E) soweit heraus, bis Sie anschlagen.
 15. Richten Sie die Sperrklinke (13) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit dem Vorsprung (14) des Schiebers (E) aus, und setzen Sie danach die Mittenfalteinheit auf den Schieber.
Halten Sie die untere Hinter- und Vorderseite (15) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) fest und setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit danach auf den Schieber (E).
 16. Ziehen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) fest.

Installare la slitta coprimanopola.

13. Installare la slitta coprimanopola (J) sul lato anteriore dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) per mezzo di due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

Installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.

14. Tirare in fuori gli scivolo (E) finché si bloccano.
 15. Allineare il dentello (13) dell'unità centrale di piegatura (A) alla parte sporgente (14) dello scivolo (E) e posarvi sopra l'unità stessa.
Assicurarsi di reggere bene sia la parte posteriore bassa che quella anteriore (15) dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) e posare l'unità sullo scivolo (E).
 16. Fissare l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

安装盖板手柄鞍座。

13. 用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 将盖板手柄鞍座 (J) 安装到中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的前部。

安装中缝装订一折页单元。

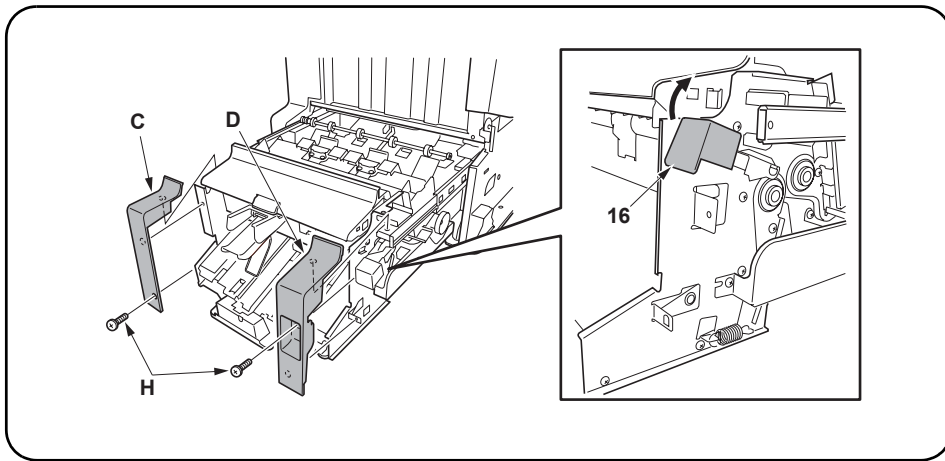
14. 拉出滑板 (E) 直到其停止下来。
 15. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的卡爪 (13) 对准滑板 (E) 的突出部 (14), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板上。
请务必握住中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的后部和前部 (15), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板 (E) 上。
 16. 用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定中缝装订一折页单元 (A)。

カバーハンドルサドルの取り付け

13. カバーハンドルサドル (J) を中折りユニット (A) 前側にビス M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で取り付ける。

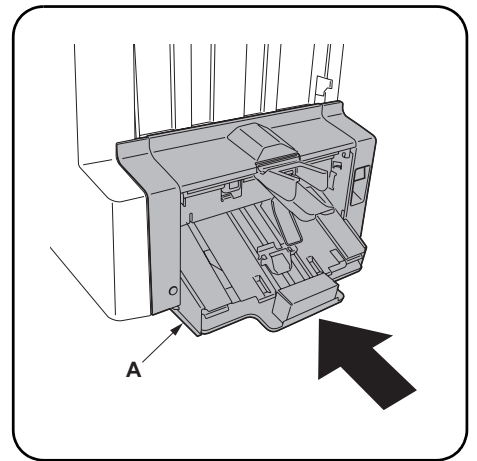
中折りユニットの取り付け

14. スライダ (E) を最後まで引き出す。
 15. 中折りユニット (A) のツメ (13) をスライダ (E) の突起 (14) に合わせて乗せる。
中折りユニット (A) は、必ず後側の底部と前側の (15) の部分を持ってスライダ (E) に乗せること。
 16. M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で中折りユニット (A) を固定する。



Installing covers.

17. Install the covers by fitting the projections on the rear side of the rear cover (C) and front cover (D) assembled in step 8 into the holes in the center-folding unit (A).
It is easy to install front cover (D) by lifting center-folding unit releasing lever (16).
18. Use two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H) to secure rear cover (C) and front cover (D).



19. Store center-folding unit (A) into the document finisher.

If center-folding unit (A) is not stored completely inside the document finisher, the unit cannot be fixed in the document finisher and center-folding unit (A) won't operate properly.

Installation des capots.

17. Installer les capots en insérant les saillies côté arrière du capot arrière (C) et du capot avant (D) montés à l'étape 8 dans les trous de la plieuse (A).
Il est facile d'installer le capot avant (D) en soulevant le levier de relâchement de la plieuse (16).
18. Utiliser deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H) pour fixer le capot arrière (C) et le capot avant (D).

19. Ranger la plieuse (A) dans le finisseur de document.

Si la plieuse (A) n'est pas complètement rangée à l'intérieur du finisseur de document, la plieuse ne peut pas être fixée dans le finisseur de document et la plieuse (A) ne fonctionne pas correctement.

Instalación de cubiertas.

17. Instale las cubiertas insertando las salientes en el lado posterior de la cubierta trasera (C) y la cubierta delantera (D), ensambladas en el paso 8, en los orificios de la bandeja de plegado (A).
Es más fácil instalar la cubierta frontal (D) levantando la palanca de liberación de la unidad de plegado (16).
18. Utilice dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H) para asegurar la cubierta posterior (C) y la cubierta frontal (D).

19. Meta la unidad de plegado (A) en el finalizador de documentos.

Si la unidad de plegado (A) no se mete completamente en el finalizador de documentos, ésta no podrá fijarse en el finalizador de documentos y no funcionará correctamente.

Anbringen der Abdeckungen.

17. Die Abdeckungen montieren, indem man die Vorsprünge an der Rückseite der hinteren Abdeckung (C) und der vorderen Abdeckung (D), die in Schritt 8 angebracht wurden, in die Öffnungen der Mittenfalteinheit (A) einsetzt.
Um den Einbau der vorderen Abdeckung (D) zu erleichtern, ist der Entriegelungshebel (16) der Mittenfalteinheit anzuheben.
18. Verwenden Sie die beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H), um die hintere Abdeckung (C) und die vordere Abdeckung (D) zu befestigen.

19. Setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) in den Dokument-Finisher ein.
Wenn die Mittenfalteinheit (A) nicht vollständig in den Dokument-Finisher eingesetzt wurde, kann die Mittenfalteinheit nicht im Dokument-Finisher befestigt werden, und die Mittenfalteinheit (A) funktioniert dann nicht richtig.

Installare i pannelli.

17. Installare i pannelli inserendo le parti sporgenti poste sul retro del pannello posteriore (C) e del pannello anteriore (D), assemblati nel passo 8, nei fori nell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).
È semplice installare il pannello anteriore (D) sollevando la leva di rilascio unità (16)
18. Utilizzare due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H) per fissare i pannelli posteriore (C) ed anteriore (D).

19. Inserire perfettamente l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) nella finitrice.
Se l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non è del tutto inserita all'interno della finitrice, è impossibile fissarla alla finitrice stessa e l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non funzionerà correttamente.

安装盖板。

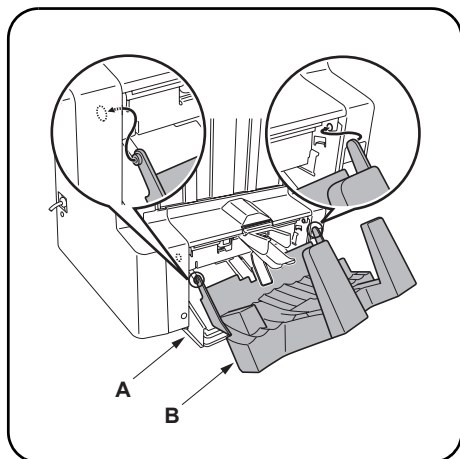
17. 通过将后盖板 (C) 后侧以及在步骤 8 中装配的前盖板 (D) 的突出部分卡入中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的孔内来安装盖板。
将中缝装订一折页单元释放杆 (16) 抬起以便更容易安装前盖板 (D)。
18. 使用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D)。

19. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 保存到文档整理器中。
如果中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 未完全保存到文档整理器中, 则无法在文档整理器中固定装置并且中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 无法正常工作。

カバーの取り付け

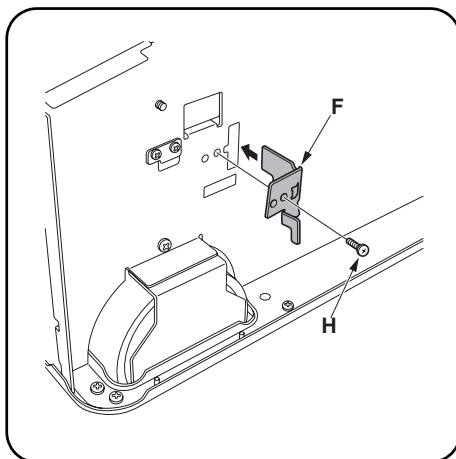
17. 手順 8 で組み立てたカバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を、裏側の突起を中折りユニット (A) の穴にはめ込み、取り付け。
18. カバー前 (D) は、中折りユニット解除レバー (16) を上げると取り付けやすい。
ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本でカバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を固定する。

19. 中折りユニット (A) をドキュメントフィニッシャーに収納する。
確実に収納されていない場合、中折りユニット (A) がドキュメントフィニッシャーに固定されず、中折りユニット (A) が正常に動作しない。



Installing the folding tray.

20. Fit the projection of folding tray (B) into the inside hole of center-folding unit (A).



Installing the douser.

- Before installing the douser (F), make sure that center-folding unit (A) is securely stored.
21. Insert douser (F) into the lower front left of the document finisher and secure the douser with a M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw (H).

Reinstalling the cover.

22. Reinstall the lower front cover (2) that was removed in step 2 in place with two screws (1).
23. Close the front cover of the document finisher.

Installation du bac de pliage.

20. Ajuster la saillie du bac de pliage (B) dans l'orifice intérieur de la plieuse (A).

Installation de l'ombreur.

- Avant d'installer l'ombreur (F), s'assurer que la plieuse (A) est bien rangée.
21. Insérer l'ombreur (F) dans l'avant gauche inférieur du finisseur de document et fixer l'ombreur à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (H).

Remontage du capot.

22. Remonter le capot avant inférieur (2) retiré à l'étape 2 à l'aide de deux vis (1).
23. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

Instalación de la bandeja plegable.

20. Coloque el resalto de la bandeja plegable (B) dentro del agujero de la unidad de plegado (A).

Instalación de la pantalla paraluz.

- Antes de instalar la pantalla paraluz (F), asegúrese de que la unidad de plegado (A) esté firmemente metida.
21. Introduzca la pantalla paraluz (F) en la parte frontal inferior izquierda del finalizador de documentos y asegure la pantalla paraluz con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

Reinstalación de la cubierta.

22. Reinstale en su lugar con dos tornillos (1) la cubierta frontal inferior (2) que fue quitada en el paso 2.
23. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

Anbringen des Faltfachs.

20. Führen Sie den Vorsprung des Faltfachs (B) in das innere Loch der Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein.

Anbringen der Abschirmung.

- Vor dem Anbringen der Abschirmung (F) ist sicherzustellen, dass die Mittenfalteinheit (A) sicher eingesetzt ist.
21. Stecken Sie die Abschirmung (F) in die untere linke Vorderseite des Dokument-Finishers ein, und ziehen Sie die Abschirmung danach mit einer M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (H) fest.

Anbringen der Abdeckung.

22. Bringen Sie die in Schritt 2 entfernte vordere untere Abdeckung (2) wieder an und verwenden Sie hierfür die beiden Schrauben (1).
23. Schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

Installare il vassoio di piegatura.

20. Inserire la parte sporgente del vassoio di piegatura (B) nel foro interno dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).

Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser).

- Prima di procedere all'installazione del dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F), assicurarsi che l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) sia perfettamente inserita.
21. Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F) nella facciata inferiore a sinistra della finitrice e fissarlo con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

Reinstallare il pannello.

22. Reinstallare nella sua posizione originale il pannello anteriore inferiore (2) rimosso nel passo 2 con due viti (1).
23. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

安装折叠托盘。

20. 将折叠托盘 (B) 的突出部固定在中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的内部孔。

安装探测器。

- 安装探测器 (F) 前, 请确定中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 已牢固地保存。
21. 将探测器 (F) 插入文档整理器的左前下侧, 并用 1 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定探测器。

重新安装盖板。

22. 用 2 颗螺钉 (1) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的前下盖板 (2)。
23. 关闭文档整理器的前盖板。

中折りトレイの取り付け

20. 中折りトレイ (B) の突起を中折りユニット (A) の内側の穴にはめ、取り付け。

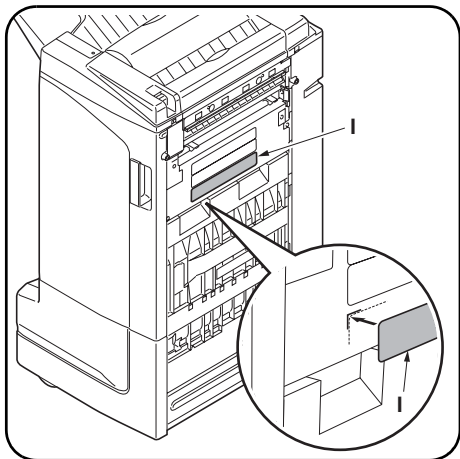
www.tonerplus.com.ua

遮光板の取り付け

- 遮光板 (F) を取り付けの前に、中折りユニット (A) が確実に収納されていることを確認すること。
21. 遮光板 (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャー正面の左下へ差し込み、M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 1 本で固定する。

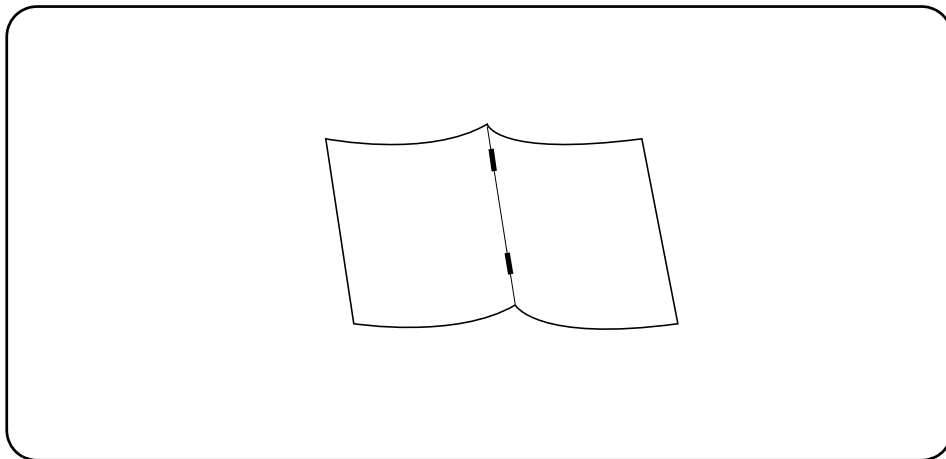
カバーの取り付け

22. 手順 2 で外した前下カバー (2) をビス (1) 2 本で元通り取り付け。
23. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前カバーを閉じる。



Adhering the label.

24. Clean the area where the label is adhered on the right cover of the document finisher with alcohol and adhere label (I) aligning with making-off line.



[Checking staple position]

1. In the center-stapling mode, perform a test copy with the paper fed from the main tray. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Check the distance from the center of the paper to the staple position. If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

Collage de l'étiquette.

24. Nettoyer la zone où l'étiquette doit être collée sur le capot de droite du finisseur de document avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (I) en l'alignant, sur la ligne indiquée.

[Vérification de la position des agrafes]

1. Dans le mode d'agrafage central, effectuer une copie de test avec la papier alimenté depuis le plateau principal. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)
2. Vérifier la distance entre le centre du papier et l'emplacement de l'agrafe. Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

Para pegar la etiqueta.

24. Limpie con alcohol el área donde va a pegar la etiqueta (I) en la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y péguela alineándola con la línea de referencia.

[Comprobación de la posición de grapado]

1. En el modo de grapado central, realice una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja principal. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Compruebe la distancia desde el centro del papel a la posición de grapado. Si la distancia no está dentro del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

Anbringen des Aufklebers.

24. Reinigen Sie den Bereich auf der rechten Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers mit Alkohol, richten Sie den Aufkleber (I) aus und kleben Sie ihn dann fest.

[Überprüfen der Heftklammerposition]

1. Machen Sie im Mitten-Heftklammermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom Hauptfach aus zugeführt wird. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Prüfen Sie den Abstand von der Mitte des Papiers zur Heftklammerposition. Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist gemäß den folgenden Schritten vorzugehen, um die Position zu korrigieren.
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

Incollare l'etichetta.

24. Pulire con alcool la zona dove si applica l'etichetta sul pannello destro della finitrice. Attaccare l'etichetta (I) allineandola alla linea di taglio.

[Controllare la posizione della pinzatrice]

1. In modalità "pinzatura centrale", eseguire una copia di prova con carta alimentata dal vassoio principale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei seguenti formati di carta:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Controllare la distanza tra il centro del foglio e la posizione della pinzatrice. Se la distanza non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire i seguenti passaggi per regolarne la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

粘貼标签。

24. 用酒精清洁在文档整理器右盖板上粘貼标签的区域并与脱离线对齐粘貼标签 (I)。

[检查装订位置]

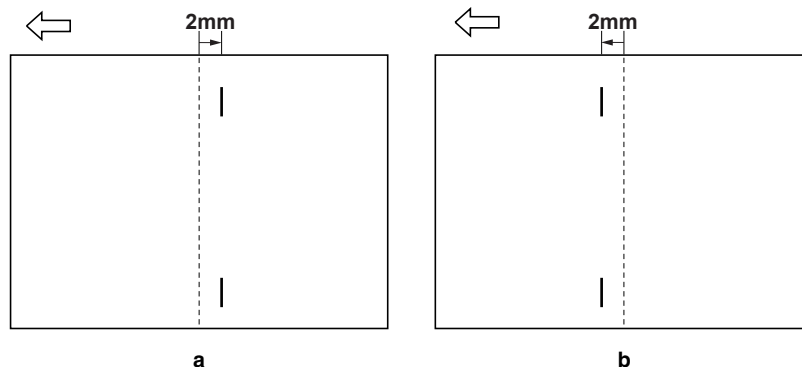
1. 在中央装订模式中，从主托盘进纸进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. 检查纸张中央到装订位置的距离。如果距离超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整位置。
<标准值> 距离中央的距离：±2mm 内

ラベルの貼り付け

24. ドキュメントフィニッシャの右カバーに貼られているラベルの下をアルコール清掃し、罫書き線に合わせてラベル (I) を貼り付ける。

[中とジステイブル位置確認]

1. 以下の用紙を使用し、中とジステイブルモード、メイントレイ排紙でテストコピーを行う。
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. ステイブル位置の中心からのずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
<基準値> 中心からのずれ：±2mm 以内



Adjusting staple position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Adjust setting value.
When staples are placed too far right copy example (a): Decrease the setting value.
When staples are placed too far left copy example (b): Increase the setting value.
Changing the value by 1 moves the stapling position by approximately 0.55 mm.
3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the staple position indicates the value within the reference range.
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

Ajustement de la position des agrafes

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.
Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (a): diminuer la valeur de réglage.
Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (b): augmenter la valeur de réglage.
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position d'agrafe d'environ 0,55 mm.
3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position d'agrafe se trouve dans la gamme de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

Ajuste de la posición de grabado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y realice el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.
Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (a): Disminuya el valor de configuración.
Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (b): Aumente el valor de configuración.
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de grabado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.
3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del centro a la posición de grapado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

Einstellen der Heftklammerposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8,5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8,5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes.
Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheinen (a): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.
Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheinen (b): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Heftklammerposition um 0,55 mm.
3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Heftklammerposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

Regolare la posizione della pinzatrice

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia di prova.
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.
Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a destra (esempio a): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.
Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a sinistra (esempio b): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.
La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di pinzatura di circa 0,55 mm.
3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione delle pinzatrici non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento. <Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

調整装订位置

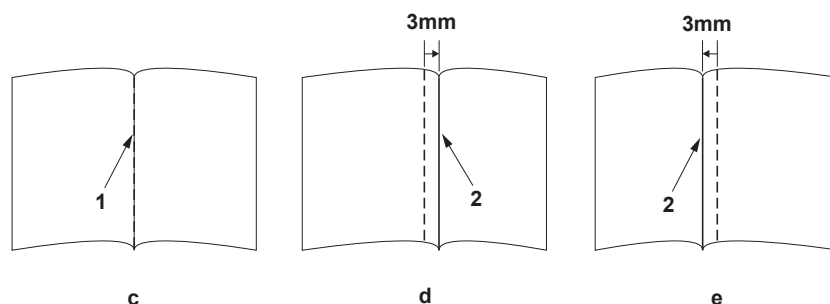
1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折叠) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR)。
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR)。
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD)。

2. 调整设定值。
订书钉远离右侧复印样本 (a) 时: 减小设定值
订书钉远离左侧复印样本 (b) 时: 增大设定值
以 1 更改数值将装订位置移动大约 0.55mm
3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到装订位置的表示数值在标准值范围之内。
<标准值> 距离中央的距离: ±2mm 内

中とジステイプル位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR) の調整を行う。
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR) の調整を行う。
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD) の調整を行う。

2. 設定値を調整する。
ステイプル位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): 設定値を下げる
ステイプル位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): 設定値を上げる
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.55mm
3. テストコピーを行う。
4. コピーサンプルのステイプル位置のずれが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。
<基準値> 中心からのずれ: ±2mm 以内



[Checking centerfold position]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. Perform a test copy in centerfold mode. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes. Draw a straight line (1) at the center of each paper (a).
A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. If the distance from center line (1) on paper (c) to centerfold position (2) on the copy sample is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the distance.

<Reference value>

Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

[Vérification de la page centrale dépliant]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Effectuer une copie de test dans le mode page centrale dépliant. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants. Tirer une ligne droite (1) au centre de chaque feuille de papier (a). Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)

3. Si la distance entre la ligne centrale (1) sur la feuille de papier (c) et la position de la page centrale dépliant (2) de l'exemple de copie se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la distance.

<Valeur de référence>

Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliant (2): ±3 mm

[Comprobación de la posición de plegado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de plegado. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes. Trace una línea recta (1) en el centro de cada papel (a). Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Si la distancia de la línea central (1) del papel (c) a la posición de plegado (2) de la muestra de copia está fuera del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la distancia.

<Valor de referencia>

Distancia desde la posición de plegado (2): ±3 mm

[Überprüfen der Mittenfaltposition]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Mittenfaltmodus eine Testkopie durch. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden: Ziehen Sie eine gerade Linie (1) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Papiers (a). Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Wenn der Abstand von der Mittellinie (1) am Papier (c) zur Mittenfaltposition (2) auf der Musterkopie außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, folgen Sie den nachfolgenden Schritten, um den Abstand einzustellen.

<Bezugswert>

Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

[Controllare la posizione della piegatura centrale]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova in modalità piegatura centrale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei formati di carta indicati in seguito. Disegnare una linea retta (1) al centro di ogni foglio (a).
Formati di carta su cui eseguire la copia di prova:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Se la distanza tra la linea centrale (1) del foglio (c) e la posizione della piegatura centrale (2) nella copia campione è al di fuori dell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire la seguente procedura per regolarla.

<Valore di riferimento>

Distancia dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

[检查折叠位置]

1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源开关。
2. 在折叠模式中进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印。在每张纸 (a) 的中央划一条直线 (1)。
下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 如果纸 (c) 上中线 (1) 距离复印样本上的折叠位置 (2) 超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整距离。

<标准值>

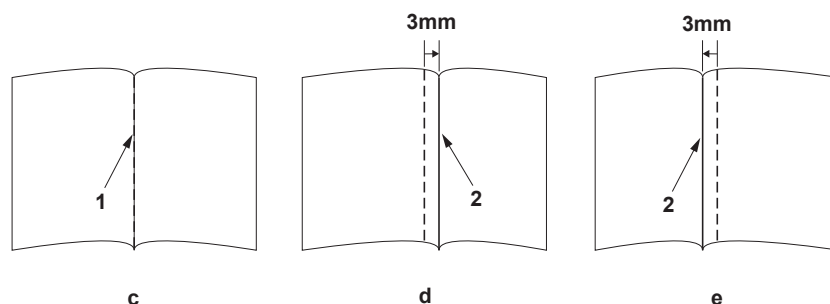
距离折叠位置 (2) 的距离: ±3mm 内

[中折り位置確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. 以下の用紙を使用し、中折りモードの2枚折りでテストコピーを行う。
用紙は、中心に線 (1) を引いておくこと。(a)
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11")、B4, LGL (8.5" × 14")、A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 用紙 (c) の中心線 (1) と、コピーサンプルの中折り位置 (2) のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値> 中折り位置 (2) のずれ: ±3mm 以内



Adjusting centerfold position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Adjust the setting value.
When the centerfold position too far right copy example (d): Increase the setting value.

When the centerfold position too far left copy example (e): Decrease the setting value.

Changing the value by 1 moves the centerfold position by approximately 0.55 mm.

3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the centerfold position indicates the value within the reference range.
<Reference value>
Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

Ajustement de la position de la page centrale dépliant

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.
Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (d): augmenter la valeur de réglage.

Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (e): diminuer la valeur de réglage.

Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de la page centrale dépliant d'environ 0,55 mm.

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position de la page centrale dépliant se trouve dans la gamme de référence.
<Valeur de référence>
Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliant (2): ±3 mm

Ajuste de la posición de plegado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y haga el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.
Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (d): Aumente el valor de configuración.

Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (e): Disminuya el valor de configuración.

El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de plegado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia de centro a la posición de plegado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde la posición (2): ±3 mm

Einstellen der Mittenfaltposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8.5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8.5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes

Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheint (d): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.

Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheint (e): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.

Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Mittenfaltposition um ca. 0,55 mm.

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Mitte der Mittenfaltposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

Regolare la posizione della piegatura centrale

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia campione.
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.
Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a destra (esempio d): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.

Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a sinistra (esempio e): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.

La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di piegatura di circa 0,55 mm.

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione della piegatura non rientra nel valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

調整折疊位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折叠) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR)。
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR)。
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD)。

2. 調整設定値。

折疊位置远离右侧复印样本 (d) 时: 增大设定值

折疊位置远离左侧复印样本 (e) 时: 减小设定值

以 1 更改数值将折疊位置移动大约 0.55mm

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到折疊位置的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。
<标准值>
距离折疊位置 (2) 的距离: ±3mm 内

中折り位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR) の調整を行う。
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR) の調整を行う。
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD) の調整を行う。
2. 設定値を調整する。
中折り位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (d): 設定値を上げる

中折り位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (e): 設定値を下げる

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.55mm

3. テストコピーを行う。
4. 中折り位置のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
<基準値> 中折り位置のずれ: ±3mm 以内

English**NOTICE**

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field.

Model: DF-760

Français**AVIS**

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ.

Modèle: DF-760

Español**AVISO**

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente.

Modelo: DF-760

Deutsch**HINWEIS**

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld.

Modell: DF-760

Italiano**NOTIFICA**

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio.

Modello: DF-760

简体中文**注意**

本产品（附属部件）适用于以下复印机。安装时，请参照附带的说明书。

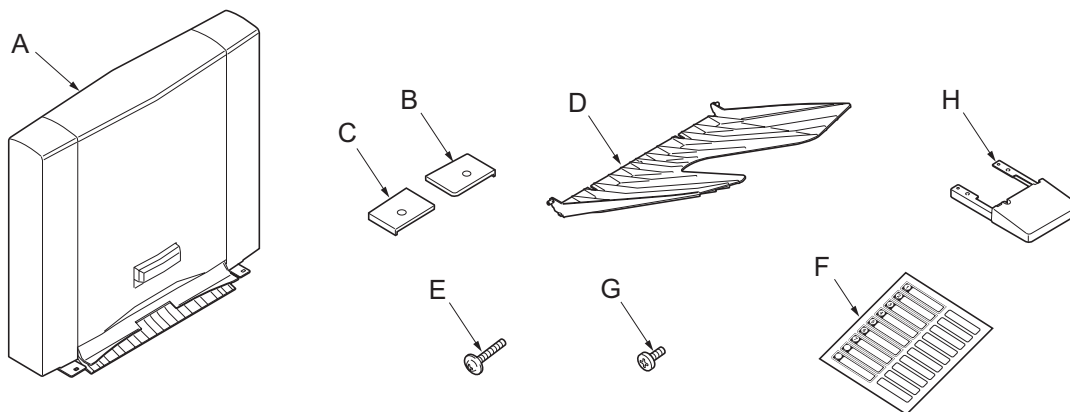
式样：DF-760

日本語**注意**

本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。
設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。

Model: DF-760

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR MAILBOX



English

Supplied parts

A Mailbox	1
B Front mounting plate cover	1
C Rear mounting plate cover	1
D Copy eject bins	7
E TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14	2

F Tray name label	1
G Taptite S binding screw M4 × 10	4
H Plate foot V	2

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Boîte à lettres	1
B Couvercle de la plaque de montage avant	1
C Couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière	1
D Case d'éjection de copies	7
E Vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14	2

F Étiquette de nom de plateau	1
G Borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 10	4
H Pied de plateau V	2

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes provistas

A Buzón de correo	1
B Cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal	1
C Cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera	1
D Bandejas de expulsión de copias	7
E Tornillo TP Taptite S M4 × 14	2

F Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja	1
G Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 10	4
H Pata de placa V	2

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Mitgelieferte Teile

A Mailbox	1
B Vordere Abdeckung der Montageplatte	1
C Hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte	1
D Kopienausgabefächer	7
E TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14	2

F Fachnamenaufkleber	1
G Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 10	4
H Plattenfuß V	2

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Italiano

Parti comprese

A Casella postale	1
B Coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore	1
C Coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore	1
D Scomparti di espulsione delle copie	7
E Vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14	2

F Etichetta di nome del vassoio	1
G Vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 10	4
H Piedino della piastra V	2

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

同装品

A 邮箱	1
B 支撑板前盖板	1
C 支撑板后盖板	1
D 接纸盘	7
E 螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP	2

F 托盘名称标贴	1
G 连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 10	4
H 底板V	2

如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

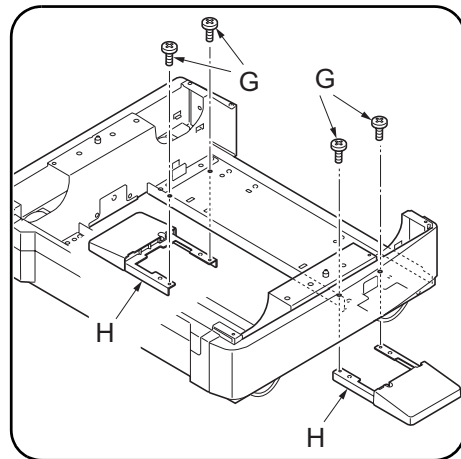
日本語

同梱品

A メールボックス	1
B 取付板カバー前	1
C 取付板カバー後	1
D 排出ビン	7
E ビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S	2

F トレイ名称シール	1
G ビス M4 × 10 バインドタップタイト S	4
H プレートフット V	2

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the mailbox.

Before installing the finisher, carry out the following procedure.

1. Fit the two plate feet V (H) and secure them using two M4 x 10TP screws (G) for each. Install the finisher referring to the installation guide for finisher.

Procédure

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position d'arrêt et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant d'entreprendre l'installation de la boîte à lettres.

Avant d'installer le retoucheur, effectuer la procédure suivante.

1. Insérer les deux pieds de plaques V (H) et les fixer à l'aide de deux vis M4 x 10TP (G) pour chaque pièce. Installer le retoucheur en se reportant au guide d'installation du retoucheur.

Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el MFP con el interruptor principal y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación del MFP de la toma de corriente de la pared antes de empezar a instalar el buzón de correo.

Antes de instalar el finalizador, realice el siguiente procedimiento.

1. Coloque las dos patas de placa V (H) y asegúrelas por medio de dos tornillos M4 x 10TP (G) para cada una. Instale el finalizador consultando la guía de instalación para el finalizador.

Verfahren

Schalten Sie vor der Installation der Mailbox unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Netzsteckdose.

Bevor Sie den Finisher installieren, führen Sie das folgende Verfahren aus.

1. Bringen Sie die beiden Plattenfüße V (H) an, und befestigen Sie sie jeweils mit zwei M4 x 10TP Schrauben (G). Installieren Sie den Finisher gemäß der Installationsanleitung des Finishers.

Procedura

Non mancare di spegnere l'MFP utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP dalla presa della rete elettrica, prima di cominciare a installare la casella postale.

Prima di installare il finitore, eseguire le seguenti procedure.

1. Inserire i due piedini della piastra V (H) e fissare ciascuno di essi utilizzando due viti M4 x 10TP (G). Installare il finitore seguendo le istruzioni della guida all'installazione del finitore.

[安装步骤]

安装邮箱时，必须关闭MFP主机上的主电源开关，并拔下主装置的电源插头后进行安装。

安装装订器之前，先按以下步骤进行操作。

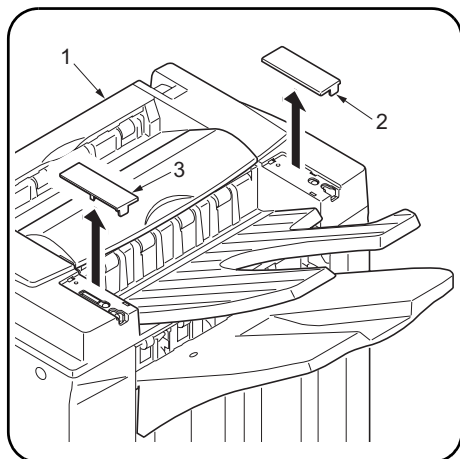
1. 将底板 V (H) 安装在2处后，分别用2个螺丝 M4 × 10TP (G) 进行固定。参照装订器安装手册，进行安装装订器。

[取付手順]

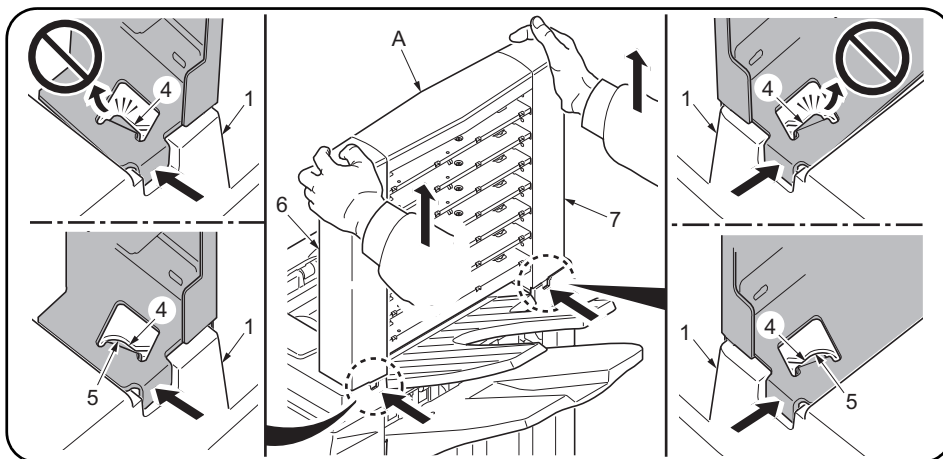
メールボックスを取り付ける際は、必ずMFP本体の主電源スイッチをOFFにし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなう。gm.ua

フィニッシャの設置を行う前に、次の手順を行う。

1. プレートフット V (H) を 2箇所取り付け、ビス M4 × 10TP (G) 各 2本で固定する。フィニッシャの設置手順書を参照して、フィニッシャの設置を行う。



2. Remove the front top cover (2) and rear top cover (3) at the top of the finisher (1) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.



3. Fit the hooks (4) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (5) located at the front and rear of the top of the finisher (1) as shown in the illustration and attach the mailbox (A) to the finisher (1).

Note: Lift the front and rear of the mailbox (A) lightly upward to make sure that the mailbox (A) does not float. If it floats, fit it again so that the hooks (4) do not protrude from the notches (5) as shown in the illustration. (You can see the notches (5) if you remove the rear cover (6) and front cover (7).)

2. Retirer le couvercle supérieur avant (2) et le couvercle supérieur arrière (3) situés en haut du retoucheur (1) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate ou d'un outil équivalent.

3. Insérer les crochets (4) se trouvant à l'avant et à l'arrière au fond de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (5) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière en haut du retoucheur (1) comme illustré ici, puis fixer la boîte à lettres (A) au retoucheur (1).

Note: Lever légèrement l'avant et l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) de sorte que celle-ci ne bouge plus. Si la boîte à lettres (A) bouge, la réinsérer de sorte que les crochets (4) ne dépassent pas des encoches (5) comme illustré. (Les encoches (5) sont visibles quand le couvercle arrière (6) et le couvercle avant (7) sont enlevés.)

2. Remueva la cubierta superior delantera (2) y la cubierta superior trasera (3) en la parte superior del finalizador (1) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana o similar.

3. Coloque los ganchos (4) ubicados en la parte inferior frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) en las muescas (5) ubicadas en la parte superior frontal y trasera del finalizador (1), como se muestra en la ilustración, y coloque el buzón de correo (A) en el finalizador (1).

Nota: Levante ligeramente la parte frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) hacia arriba para asegurarse de que el buzón de correo (A) no queda suspendido. Si quedara suspendido, colóquelo de nuevo de forma tal que los ganchos (4) no sobresalgan de las muescas (5), como se muestra en la ilustración. (Puede ver las muescas (5) si quita la cubierta trasera (6) y la cubierta frontal (7).)

2. Entfernen Sie die vordere obere Abdeckung (2) und die hintere obere Abdeckung (3) an der Oberseite des Finishers (1) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

3. Setzen Sie die Haken (4) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) in die Öffnungen (5) vorne und hinten an der Oberseite des Finishers (1) ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, und bringen Sie die Mailbox (A) am Finisher (1) an.

Hinweis: Heben Sie die Mailbox (A) vorne und hinten etwas an, um sicher zu stellen, dass die Mailbox (A) nicht pendelt. Falls Sie pendelt, ist sie noch einmal so einzupassen, dass die Haken (4) nicht aus den Öffnungen (5) hervorstehen, wie abgebildet. (Die Öffnungen (5) sind sichtbar, wenn man die hintere Abdeckung (6) und die vordere Abdeckung (7) abnimmt.

2. Rimuovere il coperchio superiore anteriore (2) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (3) dalla parte superiore del finitore (1) utilizzando un cacciavite a punta piatta, o un attrezzo simile.

3. Inserire i ganci (4) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A), negli incavi (5) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte superiore del finitore (1) come mostrato nell'illustrazione, e fissare la casella postale (A) al finitore (1).

Nota: Sollevare leggermente la parte anteriore e posteriore (A) della casella postale verso l'alto per accertarsi che non si sposti. Nel caso in cui si sposta, inserirla di nuovo in modo che i ganci (4) non sporgano fuori dagli incavi (5), come mostrato nell'illustrazione. (È possibile vedere gli incavi (5) se si rimuove il pannello posteriore (6) e il pannello anteriore (7).)

2. 用一字形螺丝刀拆下装订器 (1) 上部的顶罩前盖板 (2) 和顶罩后盖板 (3)。

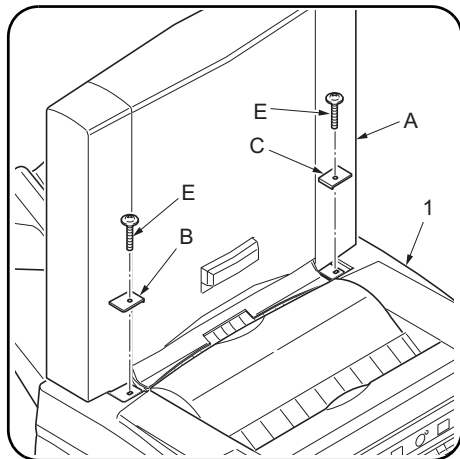
3. 如图所示, 将位于邮箱 (A) 底部前后侧的卡扣 (4) 嵌入位于装订器 (1) 顶部前后侧的凹口 (5), 并将邮箱 (A) 安装至装订器 (1)。

注:
轻轻向上提升邮箱 (A) 的前后侧, 确保邮箱 (A) 未处于悬浮状态。
如果处于悬浮状态, 请重新安装, 勿使卡扣 (4) 从凹口 (5) 中凸出, 如图所示。(拆下后盖板 (6) 和前盖板 (7) 之后可以看到凹口 (5))。

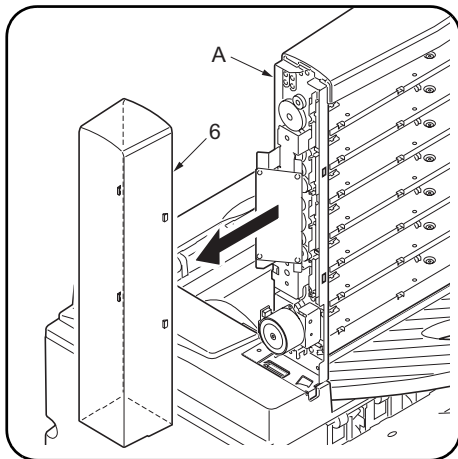
2. フィニッシャー (1) 上部の天カパー前フタ (2)、天カパー後フタ (3) をマイナスドライバーなどで取り外す。

3. メールボックス (A) 下部の前後にあるフック (4) をフィニッシャー (1) 上部の前後にある切り欠き部 (5) にイラストのように挿入し、メールボックス (A) をフィニッシャー (1) に取り付ける。

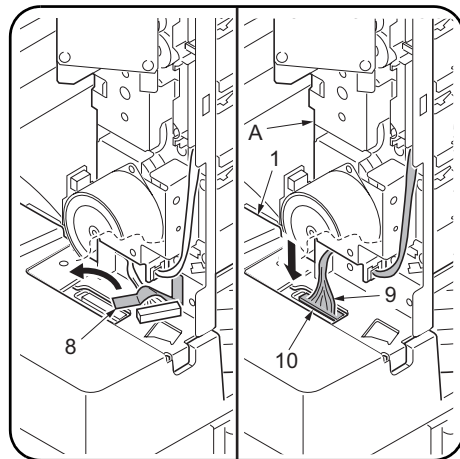
注意
メールボックス (A) の前後をそれぞれ上方に軽く持ち上げ、メールボックス (A) が浮かないことを確認する。
浮く場合は、イラストのようにフック (4) が切り欠き部 (5) に乗り上げないように、再度取り付けすること。(後カバー (6)、前カバー (7) を外すと、切り欠き部 (5) が見えます)



4. Secure the front connection portion of the mailbox (A) and the finisher (1) with the front mounting plate cover (B) using a M4 x 14TP tap-tight S screw (E) and secure the rear connection portion with the rear mounting plate cover (C) using a M4 x 14TP tap-tight S screw (E).



5. Remove the rear cover (6) at the rear of the mailbox (A) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.



6. Remove the fixing tape (8).
7. Connect the connector (9) of the mailbox (A) to the connector (10) of the finisher (1).
8. Reinstall the rear cover (6).

4. Fixer la partie raccordement avant de la boîte aux lettres (A) et le retoucheur (1) avec le couvercle de la plaque de montage avant (B) en procédant à l'aide d'une vis autotaraudeuse S M4 x 14TP (E) et fixer la partie raccordement arrière avec le couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière (C) en procédant à l'aide d'une vis autotaraudeuse S M4 x 14TP (E).

5. Déposer le couvercle arrière (6) à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) en procédant à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame ou autre.

6. Enlever la bande adhésive de fixation (8).
7. Raccorder le connecteur (9) de la boîte à lettres (A) au connecteur (10) du retoucheur (1).
8. Reposer le couvercle arrière (6).

4. Asegure la parte de conexión frontal del buzón de correo (A) y el finalizador (1) con la cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal (B) por medio de un tornillo de ajuste M4 x 14TP (E) y asegure la parte de conexión trasera a la cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera (C) por medio de un tornillo de ajuste M4 x 14TP (E).

5. Quite la cubierta trasera (6) en la parte posterior del buzón de correo (A) utilizando un destornillador de pala plana o elemento similar.

6. Despegue la cinta de fijación (8).
7. Conecte el conector (9) del buzón de correo (A) al conector (10) del finalizador (1).
8. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta trasera (6).

4. Sichern Sie den vorderen Anschlussbereich der Mailbox (A) und des Finishers (1) mit der vorderen Abdeckung (B) der Montageplatte unter Verwendung einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 14 (E), und sichern Sie den hinteren Anschlussbereich mit der hinteren Abdeckung (C) der Montageplatte unter Verwendung einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 14 (E).

5. Entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (6) an der Rückseite der Mailbox (A) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

6. Entfernen Sie das Klebeband (8).
7. Stecken Sie den Stecker (9) der Mailbox (A) in den Anschluss (10) des Finishers (1).
8. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder an.

4. Fissare la porzione di collegamento anteriore della casella postale (A) e del finitore (1) con il coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore (B) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 14TP (E) e fissare la porzione di collegamento posteriore con il coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore (C) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 14TP (E).

5. Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (6) dietro la casella postale (A) utilizzando un giravite a punta piana o strumento simile.

6. Rimuovere il nastro adesivo (8).
7. Collegare il connettore (9) della casella postale (A) al connettore (10) del finitore (1).
8. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore (6).

4. 使用M4×14TP攻丝紧固型S螺钉(E)将邮箱(A)的前连接部分和装订器(1)紧固在支撑板前盖板(B)上,并使用M4×14TP攻丝紧固型S螺钉(E)将后连接部分紧固在支撑板后盖板(C)上。

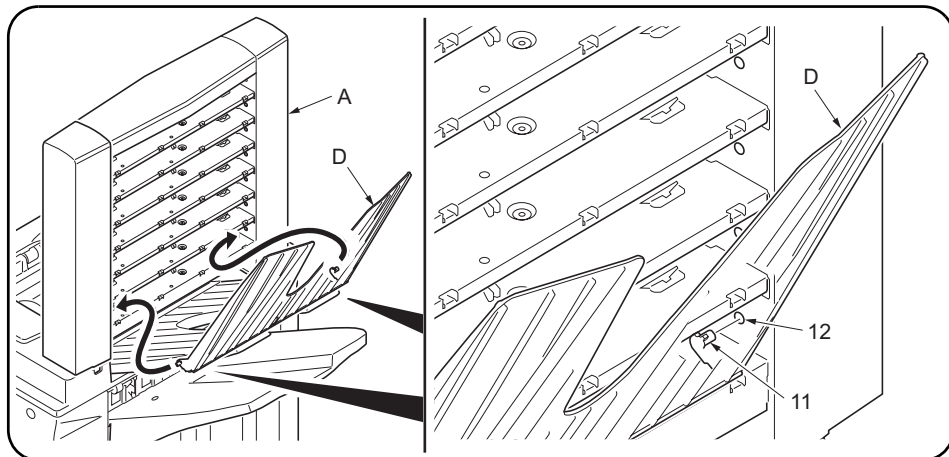
5. 使用一字型螺钉刀或类似工具拆下邮箱(A)后侧的后盖板(6)。

6. 拆下固定胶带(8)。
7. 将邮箱(A)的接插件(9)连接至装订器(1)的接插件(10)。
8. 重新安装后盖板(6)。

4. メールボックス(A)とフィニッシャー(1)の前側の接続部を取付板カバー前(B)と共にビスM4×14TPタップタイトS(E)1本で、後側の接続部を取付板カバー後(C)と共にビスM4×14TPタップタイトS(E)1本で固定する。

5. メールボックス(A)後部の後カバー(6)をマイナスドライバーなどで取り外す。

6. 固定テープ(8)を剥がす。
7. メールボックス(A)のコネクタ(9)をフィニッシャー(1)のコネクタ(10)に接続する。
8. 後カバー(6)を元通り取り付け。



- 9. Fit the seven copy eject bins (D) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.**

While pressing both ends of each copy eject bin (D) to bend it a little, fit the bin at a nearly upright angle as shown in the illustration by inserting the front and rear pins (11) into the round holes (12) at the front and rear of the mailbox (A).

- 10. Insert the MFP power plug to the outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on to check the operation.**

- 9. Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (D) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.**

Tout en appuyant sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection de copies (D) de manière à la plier légèrement, fixer la case à un angle presque droit, comme indiqué sur l'illustration, en insérant les broches avant et arrière (11) dans les trous ronds (12) situés à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A).

- 10. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position de marche pour vérifier le fonctionnement.**

- 9. Fije las siete bandejas de expulsión de copias (D) en la sección de expulsión del buzón de correo (A) de la bandeja más baja a la más alta.**

Mientras presiona ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (D) para doblarlo un poco, fije la bandeja en un ángulo casi vertical tal como en la figura, insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (11) en los orificios redondos (12) en los lados delantero y trasero del buzón de correo (A).

- 10. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP para verificar el funcionamiento.**

- 9. Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (D) in den Ausgabeabschnitt der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.**

Drücken Sie bei jedem Kopienausgabefach (D) beide Enden zusammen, um es ein wenig zu biegen, und setzen Sie dabei das Fach in einem fast aufrechten Winkel ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, indem Sie den vorderen und hinteren Stift (11) in die Rundlöcher (12) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) einsetzen.

- 10. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des MFP ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.**

- 9. Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (D) nella parte di espulsione della casella postale (A), cominciando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.**

Premendo alle due estremità di uno scomparto di emissione delle copie (D) in modo da piegarle un poco, installare lo scomparto come mostrato in illustrazione mantenendolo quasi ad angolo retto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (11) nei fori rotondi (12) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A).

- 10. Inserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa della rete elettrica e accenderla utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione in modo da controllare il funzionamento.**

- 9. 从邮箱(A)的排出部下面起按顺序安装7个接纸盘(D)。**

轻轻按下接纸盘(D)的左右使之前倾(如图所示呈竖起状态的角度), 将前后销(11)插入邮箱(A)的前后圆孔(12)内。

- 10. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座, 然后按下主开关并确认是否接通。**

- 9. 排出ビン(D)7枚をメールボックス(A)の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。**

排出ビン(D)の左右を押し少したわませながら、イラストのように立てた状態で、前後のビン(11)をメールボックス(A)の前後の丸穴(12)に挿入する。

- 10. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。**

English**NOTICE**

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field.

Model: DF-760

Français**AVIS**

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ.

Modèle: DF-760

Español**AVISO**

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente.

Modelo: DF-760

Deutsch**HINWEIS**

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld.

Modell: DF-760

Italiano**NOTIFICA**

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio.

Modello: DF-760

简体中文**注意**

本产品（附属部件）适用于以下复印机。安装时，请参照附带的说明书。

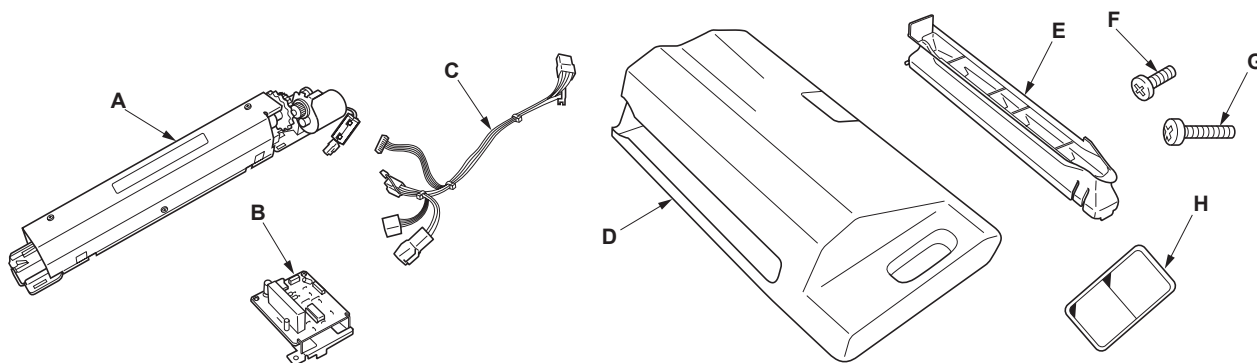
式样：DF-760

日本語**注意**

本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。
設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。

Model: DF-760

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR HOLE PUNCH UNIT



English

Supplied parts

A Hole punch unit.....	1
B Punch PCB	1
C Power cord	1
D Waste hole punch box	1
E Guide.....	1

F M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw	1
G M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw	2
H Label	1

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Perforatrice	1
B Carte de perforation.....	1
C Cordon d'alimentation	1
D Bac de récupération de la perforatrice	1
E Guide	1

F Vis S taraudée M4 × 8	1
G Vis S taraudée M4 × 10	2
H Etiquette.....	1

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Perforadora.....	1
B PCB de perforación	1
C Cable de alimentación	1
D Caja para desechos de la perforación	1
E Guía	1

F Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8.....	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10.....	2
H Etiqueta.....	1

Asegúrese de quitar cualquier cinta de fijación o material de amortiguación colocado en las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Lochereinheit	1
B Locherplatine	1
C Netzkabel.....	1
D Lochungsabfallbehälter	1
E Führung	1

F M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben.....	1
G M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben.....	2
H Aufkleber.....	1

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Unità di perforazione	1
B Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione ..	1
C Cavo di alimentazione	1
D Scarto perforazione	1
E Guida	1

F Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8	1
G Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10	2
H Etichetta.....	1

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属部件

A 打孔单元.....	1
B 打孔单元电路板.....	1
C 电源线.....	1
D 打孔纸屑盒.....	1
E 导向板.....	1

F M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉.....	1
G M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉.....	2
H 标签	1

请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

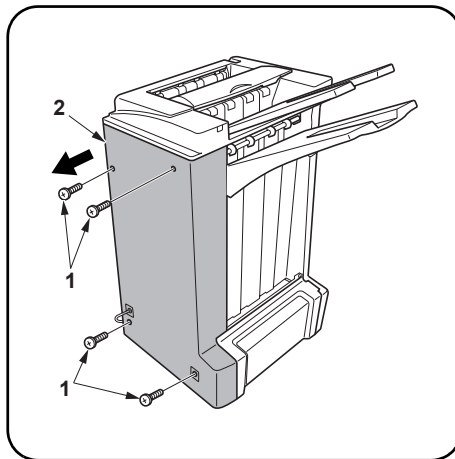
日本語

付属品

A パンチユニット.....	1
B パンチ基板.....	1
C 電線.....	1
D パンチくずボックス.....	1
E ガイド.....	1

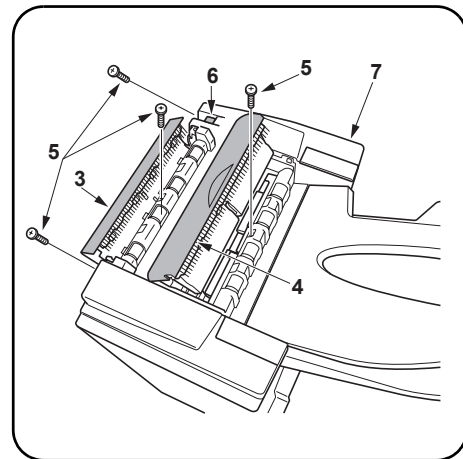
F ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S	1
G ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S	2
H ラベル	1

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



Removing the cover

1. Remove the four screws (1) to remove the back cover (2) from the document finisher.



2. Open the upper cover (3) and tray C (4) on the document finisher.
3. Remove four screws (5) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) to remove the top cover (7).

Installation Procedure

Before installing the hole punch unit, make sure the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.
Install the document finisher first and then install the hole punch unit.

Procédure d'installation

Avant d'installer la perforuse s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le câble d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.
Installer d'abord le finisseur de document, puis installer la perforatrice.

Enlèvement du capot.

1. Retirer les quatre vis (1) pour retirer le capot arrière (2) du finisseur de document.

2. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) du finisseur de document.
3. Retirer quatre vis (5) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (7).

Procedimiento de instalación

Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que el cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente de la pared.
Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la perforadora.

Extracción de la cubierta

1. Quite los cuatro tornillos (1) para quitar la cubierta posterior (2) del finalizador de documentos.

2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) del finalizador de documentos.
3. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para quitar la cubierta superior (7).

Einbauverfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Lochereinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Lochereinheit an.

Entfernen der Abdeckung

1. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (1) und entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (2) vom Dokument-Finisher.

2. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) am Dokument-Finisher.
3. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), und die obere Abdeckung (7) zu entfernen.

Procedura di installazione

Prima di installare l'unità di perforazione, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.
Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di perforazione.

Rimuovere il coperchio

1. Togliere le quattro viti (1) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (2) dalla finitrice.

2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) della finitrice.
3. Togliere quattro viti (5) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per rimuovere il coperchio (7).

安裝步驟

安裝打孔單元前，請確定 MFP 的主電源開關已經關閉並且電源線已從電源插座上拔下。
首先安裝裝訂器，然後安裝打孔單元。

拆下盖板

1. 從裝訂器上拆下 4 顆螺釘 (1) 以便拆下后盖板 (2)。

2. 打開裝訂器的上盖板 (3) 和托盤 C (4)。
3. 拆下 4 顆螺釘 (5) 并按住整理器釋放杆 (6) 以便拆下上盖板 (7)。

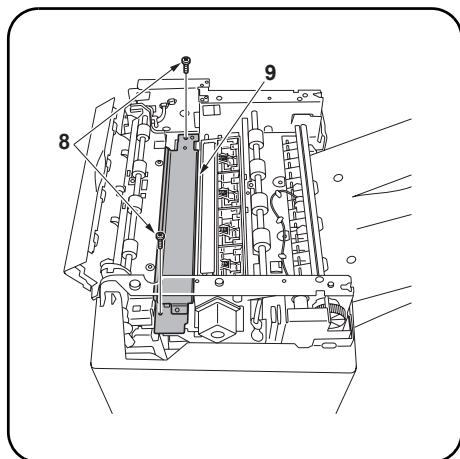
設置手順

パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、パンチユニットを設置すること。

カバーの取り外し

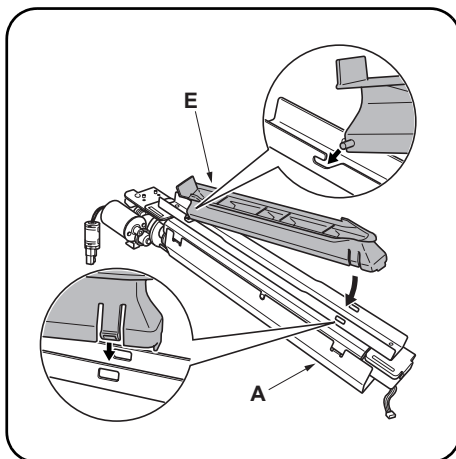
1. ビス (1) 4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャの上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を開く。
3. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャ解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) を取り外す。



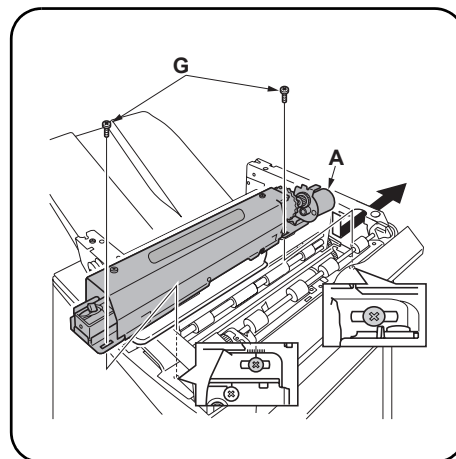
Removing the guide plate

4. Remove two screws (8) to remove the guide plate (9).



Installing the guide

5. Engage the projection and the pawl of the guide (E) with the hole punch unit (A) to install the guide.



Installing the hole punch unit

6. Tilt the hole punch unit (A) to place it through the hole in the upper side of the document finisher.
7. Fix the hole punch unit (A) with two M4 x 10 tap Tight S screws (G). Install the hole punch unit so that M4 x 10 tap Tight S screw (G) is placed at the center of each screw hole.

Enlèvement de la plaque de guidage.

4. Retirer deux vis (8) pour retirer la plaque de guidage (9).

Installation du guide

5. Engager la projection et le cliquet du guide (E) dans la perforatrice (A) pour installer le guide.

Installation de la perforatrice

6. Incliner la perforatrice (A) pour la faire passer par l'orifice de la partie supérieure du finisseur de document.
7. Fixer la perforatrice (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (G). Installer la perforatrice pour que les vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (G) soit placées au centre de chaque orifice de vis.

Extracción de la placa guía

4. Quite los dos tornillos (8) para quitar la placa guía (9).

Instalación de la guía

5. Acople el resalto y el trinquete de la guía (E) con la perforadora (A) para instalar la guía.

Instalación de la perforadora

6. Incline la perforadora (A) para colocarla a través del agujero del lado superior del finalizador de documentos.
7. Fije la perforadora (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (G). Instale la perforadora de forma que los tornillo de ajuste M4 x 10 (G) queden en el centro de cada agujero de tornillo.

Entfernen der Führungsplatte

4. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (8), um die Führungsplatte abzunehmen (9).

Anbringen der Führung

5. Bringen Sie den Vorsprung und die Sperrklinke der Führung (E) mit der Lochereinheit (A) in Eingriff, um die Führung einzubauen.

Anbringen der Lochereinheit

6. Kippen Sie die Lochereinheit (A), um sie durch das Loch an der oberen Seite des Dokument-Finishers einzuführen.
7. Nun die Lochereinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) befestigen. Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Lochereinheit so angebracht wird, dass sich die M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (G) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Schraublochs befindet.

Rimuovere la piastra guida

4. Togliere due viti (8) per rimuovere la piastra guida (9).

Installare la guida

5. Agganciare la parte sporgente e il dentello della guida (E) all'unità di perforazione (A) per installare la guida.

Installare l'unità di perforazione

6. Inclinare l'unità di perforazione (A) in modo da inserirla dentro la cavità nella parte superiore della finitrice.
7. Fissare l'unità di perforazione (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (G). Installare l'unità di perforazione in modo che la vite con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (G) sia piazzata al centro di ogni apposito foro.

拆下导向板

4. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (8) 以便拆下导向板 (9)。

安装导向板

5. 将导向板 (E) 的突起部和卡爪与打孔单元 (A) 啮合, 安装导向板。

安装打孔单元

6. 将打孔单元 (A) 倾斜, 从装订器上部的孔中穿过去。
7. 用 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 固定打孔单元 (A)。
安装打孔单元, 让 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 放在每个螺钉孔的中央。

ガイド板の取り外し

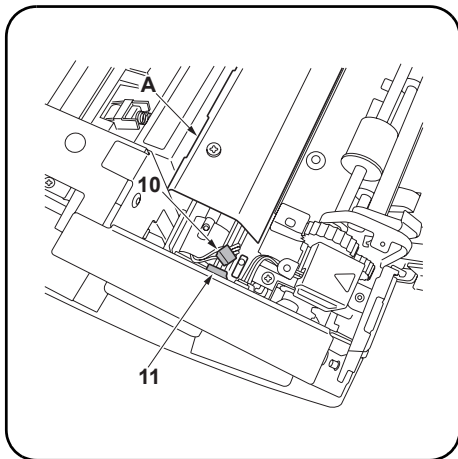
4. ビス (8) 2 本を外し、ガイド板 (9) を取り外す。

ガイドの取り付け

5. ガイド (E) の突起とツメをパンチユニット (A) に引っ掛け、取り付ける。

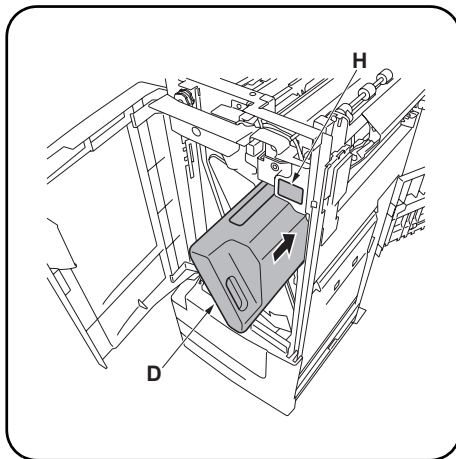
パンチユニットの取り付け

6. パンチユニット (A) を傾け、ドキュメントフィニッシャー上部の穴に通す。
7. ビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本でパンチユニット (A) を固定する。
ビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (G) がビス穴の中心の位置になるように取り付けること。



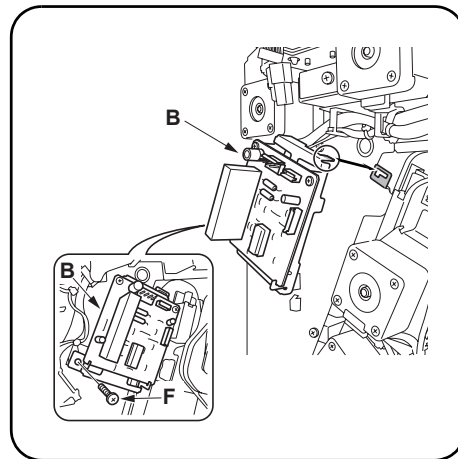
Connecting the connector (120V/220V/230V/240V models only. Except for Swedish specification)

8. Connect the 3P-connector (10) on the hole punch unit (A) to the 3P-connector (11) inside the document finisher.



Installing the waste hole punch box

9. Open the front cover of the document finisher and insert the waste hole punch box (D) along the guide (E) which was installed in step 5.
10. Clean the upper right cover of the waste hole punch box (D) with alcohol and adhere the label (H) on the concave section of the box.
11. Close the front cover of the document finisher.



Installing the punch PCB

12. Engage the pawl on the upper side of the punch PCB (B) with the groove at the back of the document finisher.
13. Secure the punch PCB (B) with M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw (F).

Connexion du connecteur (Modèles 120V/220V/230V/240V seulement. Sauf pour les spécifications suédoises)

8. Connecter le connecteur 3P (10) de la perforatrice (A) au connecteur 3P (11) à l'intérieur du finisseur de document.

Installation du bac de récupération de la perforatrice

9. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) le long du guide (E) installé à l'étape 5.
10. Nettoyer le capot supérieur droit du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (H) sur la partie concave du bac.
11. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

Installation de la carte de perforation

12. Engager le cliquet de la partie supérieure de la carte de perforation (B) dans la rainure à l'arrière du finisseur de document.
13. Fixer la carte de perforation (B) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (F).

Conexión del conector (Modelos de 120 V/220 V/230 V/240 V solamente. Excepto para las especificaciones suecas)

8. Conecte el conector de 3 contactos (10) de la perforadora (A) en el conector de 3 contactos (11) del interior del finalizador de documentos.

Instalación la caja para desechos de la perforación

9. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos e introduzca la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) a lo largo de la guía (E) que fue instalada en el paso 5.
10. Limpie la cubierta superior derecha de la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta (H) en la sección cóncava de la caja.
11. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

Instalación del PCB de perforación

12. Acople el trinquete del lado superior del PCB de perforación (B) con las ranuras de la parte posterior del finalizador de documentos.
13. Asegure el PCB de perforación (B) con el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (F).

Anschließen des Steckers (nur bei 120 V-, 220 V-, 230 V- und 240 V-Modellen)

8. Stecken Sie den 3-poligen Stecker (10) der Lochereinheit (A) in die 3-polige Buchse (11) innerhalb des Dokument-Finishers ein.

Anbringen des Lochungsabfallbehälters

9. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und bauen Sie dann den Lochabfallbehälter (D) entlang der in Schritt 5 installierten Führung (E) ein.
10. Reinigen Sie die rechte obere Abdeckung des Lochabfallbehälters (D) mit Alkohol und bringen Sie danach den Aufkleber (H) am konkaven Teil des Behälters an.
11. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

Anbringen der Locherplatine

12. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke auf der oberen Seite der Locherplatine (B) in die Nut auf der Rückseite des Dokument-Finishers eingreifen.
13. Befestigen Sie die Locherplatine (B) mit der M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (F).

Collegare il connettore (solo per i modelli 120V/220V/230V/240V. Eccetto per la specificazione svedese)

8. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini (10) dell'unità di perforazione (A) al connettore a 3 piedini (11) all'interno della finitrice.

Installare lo scarto perforazione (Contenitore degli scarti per la perforazione).

9. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice e inserire lo scarto perforazione (D) lungo la guida (E) installata nel passo 5.
10. Pulire il pannello superiore destro dello scarto perforazione (D) con alcool e incollare l'etichetta (H) nella sezione concava del contenitore.
11. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

Installare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione

12. Agganciare il dentello che si trova nella parte superiore della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) nel foro sulla parte posteriore della finitrice.
13. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) con una viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (F).

- 连接插头
(仅适用于 120V/220V/230V/240V 型号。
除瑞典规格)
8. 将打孔单元 (A) 上的 3P 插头 (10) 连接到装订器内的 3P 插头 (11)。

安装打孔纸屑盒

9. 打开装订器的前盖板并沿着在步骤 5 中安装的导向板 (E) 插入打孔纸屑盒 (D)。
10. 用酒精清洁打孔纸屑盒 (D) 的右上盖板, 并将标签 (H) 粘到盒的凹面。
11. 关闭装订器的前盖板。

安装打孔单元电路板

12. 将打孔单元电路板 (B) 的上部卡爪与装订器后部的沟槽啮合。
13. 用 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。

コネクタの接続 (120V/220V/230V/240V 仕様のみ。ただしスウェーデン仕様は除く)

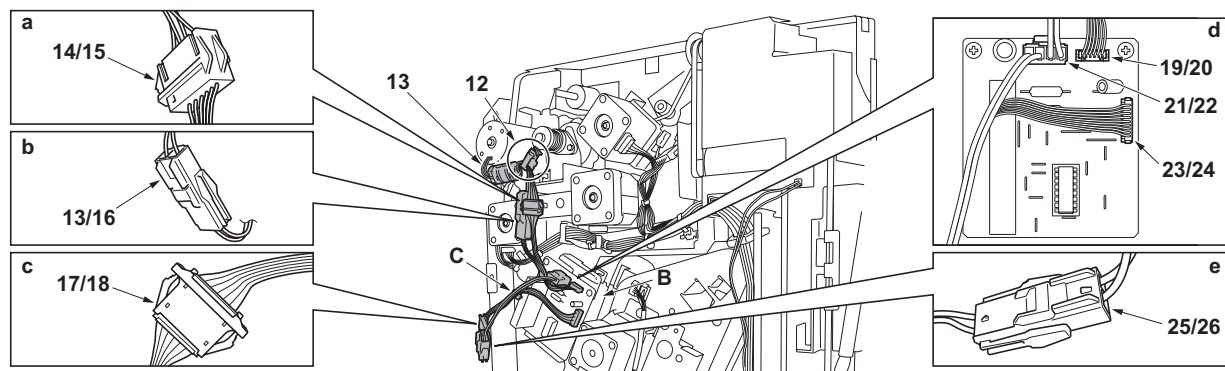
8. パンチユニット (A) の 3P コネクタ (10) をドキュメントフィニッシャの 3P コネクタ (11) に接続する。

パンチくずボックスの取り付け

9. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開き、手順 5 で取り付けしたガイド (E) に沿ってパンチくずボックス (D) を挿入する。
10. パンチくずボックス (D) 右上のカバーをアルコール清掃し、凹部に合わせてラベル (H) を貼り付ける。
11. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを閉じる。

パンチ基板の取り付け

12. パンチ基板 (B) の上部のツメをドキュメントフィニッシャ後側の溝に引っ掛ける。
13. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (F) 1 本でパンチ基板 (B) を固定する。



14. Open the wire saddle (12) and put the 2P-connector (13) on the motor through the wire saddle to fix the punch PCB (B).
15. Connect the power cord (C) to the punch PCB (B).
- Figure (a): 6P-connector (14) of power cord (C) and 6P-connector (15) of sensor
- Figure (b): 2P-connector (13) of power cord (C) and 2P-connector (16) of motor
- Figure (c): 9P-connector (17) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (18) of document finisher power cord

- Figure (d): 6P-connector (19) of power cord (C) and YC3 connector (20) of punch PCB (B)
- Figure (d): 4P-connector (21) of power cord (C) and YC1 connector (22) of punch PCB (B)
- Figure (d): 9P-connector (23) of power cord (C) and YC2 connector (24) of punch PCB (B)
- Figure (e): 9P-connector (25) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (26) of document finisher power cord

14. Ouvrir la selle de câble (12) et faire passer le connecteur 2P (13) dans le moteur par la selle de câble pour fixer la carte de perforation (B).
15. Connecter le cordon d'alimentation (C) et la carte de perforation (B).
- Figure (a): connecteur 6P (14) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 6P (15) du capteur
- Figure (b): connecteur 2P (13) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 2P (16) du moteur
- Figure (c): connecteur 9P (17) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (18) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

- Figure (d): connecteur 6P (19) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC3 (20) de la carte de perforation (B)
- Figure (d): connecteur 4P (21) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC1 (22) de la carte de perforation (B)
- Figure (d): connecteur 9P (23) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC2 (24) de la carte de perforation (B)
- Figure (e): connecteur 9P (25) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (26) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

14. Abra la placa de cable (12) y ponga el conector de 2 contactos (13) en el motor a través de la placa de cable para fijar el PCB de perforación (B).
15. Conecte el cable de alimentación (C) en el PCB de perforación (B).
- Figura (a): Conector de 6 contactos (14) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 6 contactos (15) del sensor
- Figura (b): Conector de 2 contactos (13) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 2 contactos (16) del motor
- Figura (c): Conector de 9 contactos (17) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (18) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

- Figura (d): Conector de 6 contactos (19) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC3 (20) del PCB de perforación (B)
- Figura (d): Conector de 4 contactos (21) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC1 (22) del PCB de perforación (B)
- Figura (d): Conector de 9 contactos (23) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC2 (24) del PCB de perforación (B)
- Figura (e): Conector de 9 contactos (25) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (26) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

14. Öffnen Sie den Kabelhalter (12) und führen Sie den 2-poligen Stecker (13) durch den Kabelhalter am Motor, um die Locherplatine (B) zu befestigen.
15. Schließen Sie das Netzkabel (C) an der Locherplatine (B) an.
- Abbildung (a): 6-poliger Stecker (14) des Netzkabels (C) und 6-poliger Stecker (15) des Sensors
- Abbildung (b): 2-poliger Stecker (13) des Netzkabels (C) und 2-poliger Stecker (16) des Motors
- Abbildung (c): 9-poliger Stecker (17) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (18) des Dokument-Finishers-Netzkabels

- Abbildung (d): 6-poliger Stecker (19) des Netzkabels (C) und YC3-Stecker (20) der Locherplatine (B)
- Abbildung (d): 4-poliger Stecker (21) des Netzkabels (C) und YC1-Stecker (22) der Locherplatine (B)
- Abbildung (d): 9-poliger Stecker (23) des Netzkabels (C) und YC2-Stecker (24) der Locherplatine (B)
- Abbildung (e): 9-poliger Stecker (25) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (26) des Dokument-Finisher-Netzkabels

14. Aprire la slitta del filo (12) e inserire il connettore a 2 piedini (13) sul motore attraverso la slitta in modo da fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).
15. Collegare il cavo di alimentazione (C) alla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).
- Figura (a): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (14) e connettore sensore a 6 piedini (15)
- Figura (b): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 2 piedini (13) e connettore motore a 2 piedini (16)
- Figura (c): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (17) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (18)

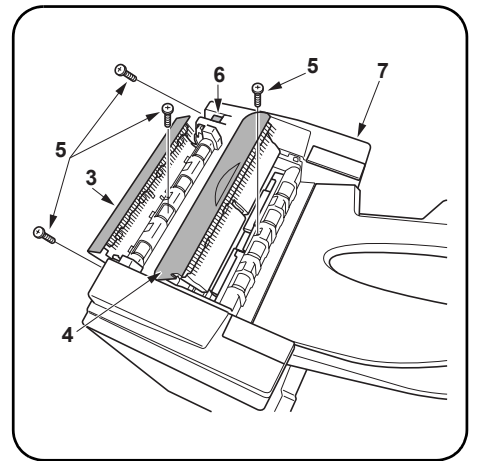
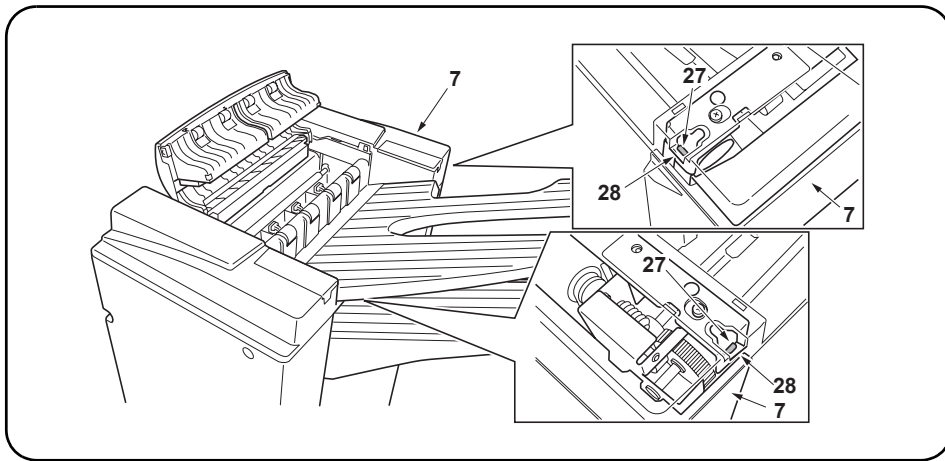
- Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (19) e connettore YC3 (20) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
- Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 4 piedini (21) e connettore YC1 (22) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
- Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (23) e connettore YC2 (24) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
- Figura (e): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (25) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (26)

14. 打开电线束线夹 (12) 并将电机上的 2P 插头 (13) 穿过电线束线夹, 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。
15. 将电源线 (C) 连接到打孔单元电路板 (B)。
- 图 (a): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (14) 和传感器的 6P 插头 (15)
- 图 (b): 电源线 (C) 的 2P 插头 (13) 和电机的 2P 插头 (16)
- 图 (c): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (17) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (18)

- 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (19) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC3 插头 (20)
- 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 4P 插头 (21) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC1 插头 (22)
- 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (23) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC2 插头 (24)
- 图 (e): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (25) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (26)

14. ワイヤーサドル (12) を開き、モータの 2P コネクタ (13) をワイヤーサドル (12) へ通して固定する。
15. 電線 (C) をパンチ基板 (B) と接続する。
- 図 (a): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (14) とセンサの 6P コネクタ (15)
- 図 (b): 電線 (C) の 2P コネクタ (13) とモータの 2P コネクタ (16)
- 図 (c): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (17) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (18)

- 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (19) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC3 コネクタ (20)
- 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 4P コネクタ (21) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC1 コネクタ (22)
- 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (23) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC2 コネクタ (24)
- 図 (e): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (25) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (26)



Installing the cover

16. Engage the pawl (27) of the document finisher with the concave section (28) at the back of the top cover (7) which was removed in step 3. After that, reinstall the top cover (7) by pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) with four screws (5).
If the pawl (27) is not securely engaged with the concave section, the top cover (7) is loose, which may cause incorrect operation of the document finisher.
17. Close the upper cover (3) and the tray C (4) which were opened in step 2.

Installation du capot

16. Engager le cliquet (27) du finisseur de document dans la partie concave (28) de l'arrière du capot supérieur (7) retiré à l'étape 3. Ensuite, réinstaller le capot supérieur (7) en serrant le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) à l'aide de quatre vis (5).
Si le cliquet (27) n'est pas bien engagé dans la partie concave, le capot supérieur (7) est lâche, ce qui peut entraîner un fonctionnement incorrect du finisseur de document.
17. Refermer le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) ouverts à l'étape 2.

Instalación de la cubierta

16. Acople el trinquete (27) del finalizador de documentos con la sección cóncava (28) de la parte posterior de la cubierta superior (7) que fue quitada en el paso 3. Después, presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (7) con cuatro tornillos (5).
Si el trinquete (27) no está firmemente acoplado con la sección cóncava, la cubierta superior (7) quedará floja, lo que podrá causar un funcionamiento incorrecto del finalizador de documentos.
17. Cierre la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) que fueron abiertas en el paso 2.

Anbringen der Abdeckung

16. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke (27) des Dokument-Finishers in den konkaven Teil (28) auf der Rückseite der oberen Abdeckung (7) eingreifen, die zuvor in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde. Drücken Sie danach den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), um die obere Abdeckung (7) mit den vier Schrauben (5) zu befestigen.
Wenn die Sperrklinke (27) nicht gut in den konkaven Teil eingreift, ist die obere Abdeckung (7) locker. Dabei kann es zu einer Funktionsstörung im Dokument-Finisher kommen.
17. Schließen Sie die in Schritt 2 geöffnete obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) wieder.

Installare il pannello

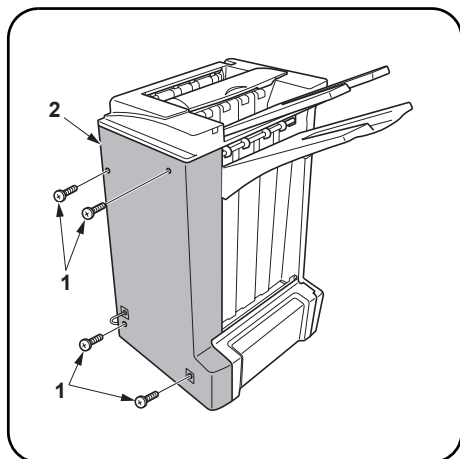
16. Agganciare il dentello (27) della finitrice alla sezione concava (28) sul retro del coperchio (7) rimosso al passo 3. In seguito, premi la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per reinstallare il coperchio (7) con quattro viti (5).
Se il dentello (27) non è fermamente agganciato alla sezione concava, il coperchio (7) risulta allentato e ciò può causare il malfunzionamento della finitrice.
17. Chiudere il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) aperti nel passo 2.

安装盖板

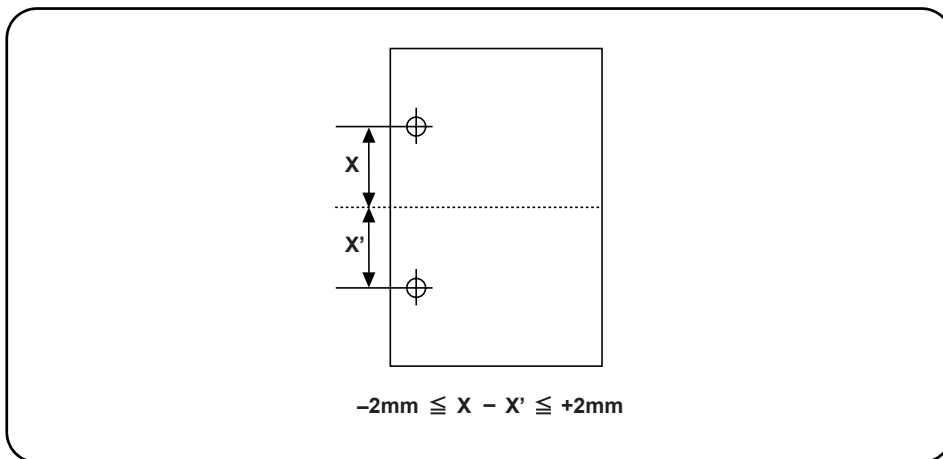
16. 将装订器的卡爪 (27) 与在步骤 3 中拆下的上盖板 (7) 后凹面 (28) 啮合。之后, 按下装订器释放杆 (6), 用 4 颗螺钉重新安装上部盖板 (7)。
如果卡爪 (27) 未与凹面牢固地啮合, 上盖板 (7) 会松动, 可能会造成装订器的异常操作。
17. 关闭在步骤 2 中打开的上盖板 (3) 和托盘 C (4)。

カバーの取り付け

16. ドキュメントフィニッシャーのツメ (27) を、手順 3 で外した天カバー (7) 裏側の凹部 (28) に引っ掛け、フィニッシャー解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) をはめ込み、ビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。
ツメ (27) が確実に引っ掛けられていない場合、天カバー (7) が浮いた状態になり、ドキュメントフィニッシャーが正常に動作しない恐れがある。
17. 手順 2 で開いた上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を閉じる。



18. Use four screws (1) to reinstall the back cover (2) which was removed from the document finisher in step 1.



[Checking the center of the punch hole]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
3. Check for any off-centering in the punch holes. If any off-centering is observed, follow the procedure below to adjust the hole position.
<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes: ± 2 mm

18. Utiliser quatre vis (1) pour réinstaller le capot arrière (2) retiré du finisseur de document à l'étape 1.

[Vérification du centre des perforations]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.
2. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
3. Vérifier tout décentrage des perforations. Si des décentrages se produisent, suivre la procédure ci-dessous pour ajuster la position de perforation.
<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations: ± 2 mm

18. Utilice cuatro tornillos (1) para volver a instalar la cubierta posterior (2) que fue quitada del finalizador de documentos en el paso 1.

[Comprobación del centro del agujero perforado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
3. Compruebe que no haya ningún agujero perforado descentrado. Si lo hay, siga el procedimiento de abajo para ajustar la posición del agujero.
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados: ± 2 mm

18. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (1), um die hintere Abdeckung (2) zu befestigen, welche in Schritt 1 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurde.

[Überprüfen der Stanzlöcherzentrierung]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Lochungsmodus einen Test aus, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
3. Prüfen Sie auf nicht zentrierte Löcher. Sollte dies der Fall sein, folgen Sie dem nachfolgendem Verfahren, um die Lochposition zu korrigieren.
<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher: ± 2 mm

18. Utilizzare quattro viti (1) per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (2) rimosso dalla finitrice nel passo 1.

[Verificare la centratura dei fori di perforazione]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
3. Verificare che i fori di perforazione siano correttamente centrati. Nel caso in cui non lo siano, eseguire la procedura indicata qui di seguito per regolarne la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione: ± 2 mm

18. 用 4 顆螺釘 (1) 重新安裝在步驟 1 中從裝訂器上拆下的後蓋板 (2)。

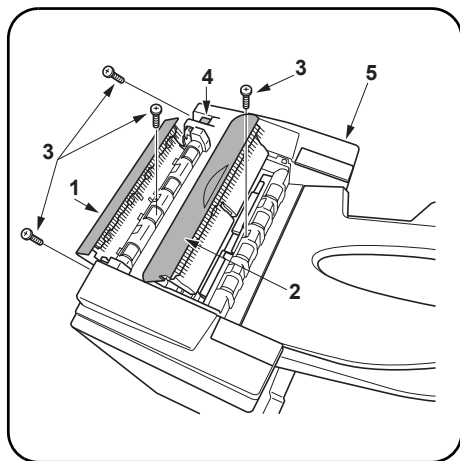
[检查打孔的中央]

1. 將 MFP 插入電源插座，打開主電源開關。
2. 在打孔模式中，從 MP 托盤進紙進行測試複印。
3. 檢查打孔是否偏离中央。如果觀察到有偏离中央的情況，按照下列步驟調整打孔位置。
<標準值> 打孔的垂直間隙: ± 2 mm

18. 手順 1 で外したドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー (2) をビス (1) 4 本で元通り取り付け。

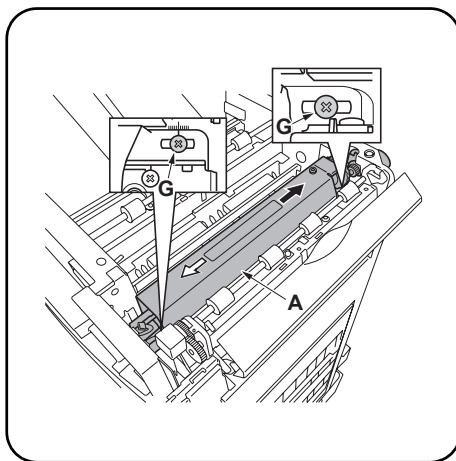
[パンチ穴のセンター位置確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
3. パンチ穴のセンター位置のずれを確認する。パンチ穴が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ: ± 2 mm



Centering punch-holes

1. Open the upper cover (1) and the tray C (2) of the document finisher.
2. Remove four screws (3) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (4) to remove the top cover (5).

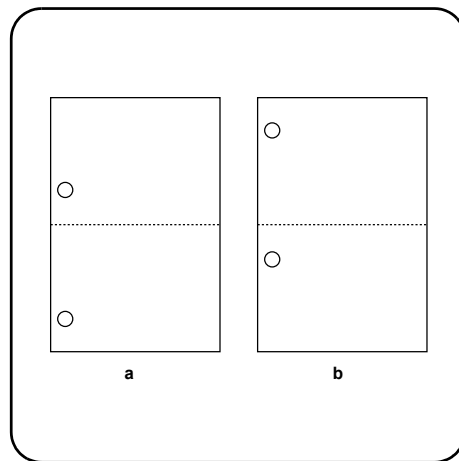


3. Loosen two M4 x 10 tap Tight S screws (G) of the hole punch unit (A).

4. Adjust the position of the hole punch unit (A).

When holes are punched too far lower copy example (a): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the black arrow.
When holes are punched too far upper copy example (b): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the white arrow.

5. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.
6. Perform a test copy.



Centrage des perforations

1. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (1) et le bac C (2) du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer quatre vis (3) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur (4) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (5).

3. Desserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (G) de la perforatrice (A).

4. Ajuster la position de la perforatrice (A).

Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop bas dans l'exemple de copie (a): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche noire.

Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop haut dans l'exemple de copie (b): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche blanche.

5. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.
6. Effectuer une copie de test.

Centrado de los agujeros de perforación

1. Abra la cubierta superior (1) y la bandeja C (2) del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los cuatro tornillos (3) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (4) para quitar la cubierta superior (5).

3. Afloje dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (G) de la perforadora (A).

4. Ajuste la posición de la perforadora (A).

Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia abajo en el ejemplo de copia (a): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha negra.

Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia arriba en el ejemplo de copia (b): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha blanca.

5. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.
6. Haga una copia de prueba.

Zentrieren der Stanzlöcher

1. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (1) sowie das Fach C (2) des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (3) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (4), um die obere Abdeckung (5) zu entfernen.

3. Lösen Sie die beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) der Lochereinheit (A).

4. Stellen Sie die Position der Lochereinheit (A) ein.

Wenn die Löcher zu weit unten durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (a): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils.

Wenn die Löcher zu weit oben durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (b): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des weißen Pfeils.

5. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.
6. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.

Centratura dei fori di perforazione

1. Aprire il pannello superiore (1) e il vassoio C (2) della finitrice.
2. Togliere quattro viti (3) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (4) per rimuovere il coperchio (5).

3. Allentare due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (G) dell'unità di perforazione (A).

4. Regolare la posizione dell'unità di perforazione (A).

Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in basso (esempio a): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia nera.

Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in alto (esempio b): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia bianca.

5. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.
6. Eseguire una copia di prova.

将打孔调整居中

1. 打开装订器的上盖板 (1) 和托盘 C (2)。
2. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (3) 并按住整理器释放杆 (4) 以便拆下上盖板 (5)。

3. 松开打孔单元 (A) 的 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。

4. 调整打孔单元 (A) 的位置。

打孔远离下部复印样本 (a) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向黑色箭头指示的方向。

打孔远离上部复印样本 (b) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向白色箭头指示的方向。

5. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息, 请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。
6. 进行测试复印。

パンチ穴のセンター位置調整

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの上カバー (1) とトレイ C (2) を開く。
2. ビス (3) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャー解除レバー (4) 押しながら上カバー (5) を取り外す。

3. パンチユニット (A) のビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を緩める。

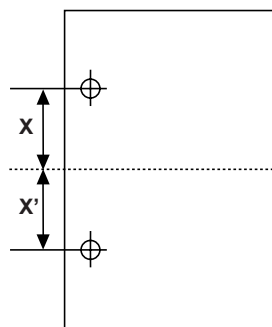
4. パンチユニット (A) の位置調整を行う。

パンチ穴が下にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): パンチユニット (A) を黒矢印の方向へずらす。

パンチ穴が上にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): パンチユニット (A) を白矢印の方向へずらす。

5. 手順 2 で外した上カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。

6. テストコピーを行う。



7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until the vertical gap of the punch holes on the copy sample are within the reference value.
8. After adjustment, tighten two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G) loosened in step 3.
9. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.

<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes: ±2 mm

7. Répéter les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que l'espace vertical des perforations de l'échantillon de copie se trouve à l'intérieur de la valeur de référence.
8. Après l'ajustement, resserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) desserrées à l'étape 3.
9. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.

<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations: ±2 mm

7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la separación vertical de los agujeros perforados en la muestra de la copia cumplan con el valor de referencia.
8. Después de hacer el ajuste, apriete dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) aflojados en el paso 3.
9. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.

<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados: ±2 mm

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 6, bis der Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher auf der Testkopie innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
8. Nach der Einstellung sind die beiden in Schritt 3 gelösten M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) wieder festzuziehen.
9. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.

<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher: ±2 mm

7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 finché la distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione nella copia campione non rientra nel valore di riferimento.
8. Dopo la regolazione, serrare le due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) allentate nel passo 3.
9. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.

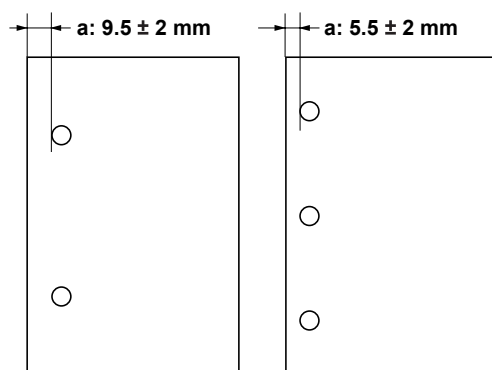
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione: ±2 mm

7. 重复步骤 1 至 6 直到复印样本上打孔垂直间隙在标准值范围之内。
8. 调整后，拧紧在步骤 3 中松开的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。
9. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息，请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。

<标准值> 打孔的垂直间隙: ±2mm

7. コピーサンプルのパンチ穴のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
8. 調整終了後、手順 3 で緩めたビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を締め付ける。
9. 手順 2 で外した天カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。

<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ: ± 2mm



[Checking distance from leading edge to the punch holes]

1. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
2. Check the distance from the paper leading edge to the punch holes (a). If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.
<Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ± 2 mm
Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ± 2 mm

Adjusting distance from leading edge to the punch holes

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select FINISHER 3000 and PUNCH POS ADJ mode.
2. Adjust the setting value.
If (a) is shorter than the reference value, increase the setting value.
If (a) is larger than the reference value, decrease the setting value.
Changing the value by 1 moves the punching position by approximately 0.49 mm

[Vérification de la distance du bord d'entrée aux perforations]

1. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
2. Vérifier la distance entre le bord d'entrée du papier et les perforations (a). Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.
<Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: 9,5 ± 2 mm
Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: 5,5 ± 2 mm

Ajustement de la distance entre le bord d'entrée et les perforations

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner FINISHER 3000 et le mode PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuster la valeur de réglage.
Si (a) est inférieur à la valeur de référence, augmenter la valeur de réglage.
Si (a) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, diminuer la valeur de réglage.
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de perforation d'environ 0,49 mm.

[Comprobación de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados]

1. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
2. Compruebe la distancia del borde delantero del papel a los agujeros perforados (a). Si la distancia no se encuentra dentro del valor de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: 9,5 ± 2 mm
Distancia (a) en pulgadas: 5,5 ± 2 mm

Ajuste de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione FINISHER 3000 y el modo PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.
Si (a) es inferior al valor de referencia, aumente el valor de configuración.
Si (a) es superior al valor de referencia, disminuya el valor de configuración.
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de perforación 0,49 mm aproximadamente.

[Überprüfen des Abstands von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern]

1. Führen Sie im Lochermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
2. Überprüfen Sie den Abstand von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern (a). Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist die Einstellung gemäß den nachfolgenden Schritte durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): 9,5 ± 2 mm
Abstand in Zoll (a): 5,5 ± 2 mm

Einstellen des Abstands von der Vorderkante zu den Stanzlöchern

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein und wählen Sie dann FINISHER 3000 und PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Regeln Sie den Einstellungswert.
Wenn (a) kleiner als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu erhöhen.
Wenn (a) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu reduzieren.
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1 verschiebt die Lochstanzposition um 0,49 mm.

[Verificare la distanza distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione]

1. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
2. Controllare la distanza tra i fori di perforazione e il bordo anteriore del foglio (a). Se la distanza non è compresa tra gli intervalli di riferimento, eseguire i passaggi successivi per regolarne la posizione.
<Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: 9,5 ± 2 mm
Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: 5,5 ± 2 mm

Impostazione della distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare le modalità FINISHER 3000 e PUNCH POS ADJ (regola posizione di cucitura).
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.
Nel caso in cui (a) sia minore del valore di riferimento, aumentare il valore di impostazione.
Se (a) è maggiore del valore previsto, ridurre il valore di impostazione.
La modifica del valore 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di cucitura di circa 0,49 mm

[检查前边到打孔的距离]

1. 在打孔模式中，从 MP 托盘进纸进行测试复印。
2. 检查纸张前边到打孔 (a) 的距离。如果距离超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整位置。
<标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a): 9.5 ± 2mm
英制规格的距离 (a): 5.5 ± 2mm

调整前边到打孔的距离

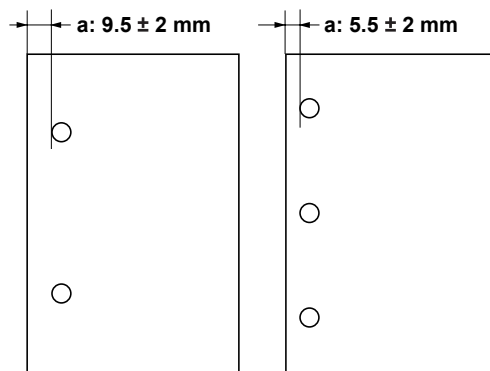
1. 进入维修模式 U246，选择 FINISHER 3000（整理器 3000）和 PUNCH POS ADJ（打孔位置调整）模式。
2. 调整设定值。
如果 (a) 短于标准值，请增大设定值。
如果 (a) 长于标准值，请减小设定值。
以 1 更改数值将打孔位置移动大约 0.49mm

[パンチ穴の先端位置確認]

1. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
2. パンチ穴の用紙先端からの位置 (a) を確認する。位置のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
<基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 9.5 ± 2mm
インチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 5.5 ± 2mm

パンチ穴の先端位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 にセットし、FINISHER 3000、PUNCH POS ADJ を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
(a) が基準値より短い場合: 設定値を上げる。
(a) が基準値より長い場合: 設定値を下げる。
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.49mm



3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the leading edge to the punch hole indicates the value within the reference range.
 <Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ± 2 mm
 Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ± 2 mm

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la distance entre le bord d'entrée et la perforation indique une valeur se trouvant à l'intérieur de la gamme de référence.
 <Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: $9,5 \pm 2$ mm
 Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: $5,5 \pm 2$ mm

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del borde de entrada al agujero perforado indique una distancia comprendida dentro del valor de referencia.
 <Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: $9,5 \pm 2$ mm
 Distancia (a) en pulgadas: $5,5 \pm 2$ mm

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Vorderkante zur Lochung innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
 <Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): $9,5 \pm 2$ mm
 Abstand in Zoll (a): $5,5 \pm 2$ mm

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione non rientra negli intervalli di riferimento.
 <Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: $9,5 \pm 2$ mm
 Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: $5,5 \pm 2$ mm

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到前边到打孔的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。
 <标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a): 9.5 ± 2 mm
 英制规格的距离 (a): 5.5 ± 2 mm

3. テストコピーを行う。
4. パンチ穴の用紙先端までの位置が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
 <基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 9.5 ± 2 mm
 インチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 5.5 ± 2 mm

www.tonerplus.com.ua

KYOCERA MITA EUROPE B.V.

Hoeksteen 40, 2132 MS Hoofddorp,
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.654.0000
Home page: <http://www.kyoceramita-europe.com>
Email: info@kyoceramita-europe.com

KYOCERA MITA NEDERLAND B.V.
Beechavenue 25, 1119RA Schiphol-Rijk
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.58.77.200

KYOCERA MITA (UK) LTD
8 Beacontree Plaza
Gillette Way Reading Berks RG2 0BS,
U.K.
Phone: +44.1189.311.500

KYOCERA MITA ITALIA S.p.A.
Via G. Verdi, 89 / 91, 20063 Cernusco s/N
Milano, Italy
Phone: +39.02.92179.1

S.A. KYOCERA MITA BELGIUM N.V.
Hermesstraat 8A, 1930 Zaventem,
Belgium
Phone: +32.2.720.9270

KYOCERA MITA FRANCE S.A.
Parc Les Algorithmes Saint Aubin
91194 GIF-SUR-YVETTE,
France
Phone: +33.1.6985.2600

KYOCERA MITA ESPAÑA S.A.
Edificio Kyocera, Avda de Manacor No. 2,
28290 Las Matas (Madrid),
Spain
Phone: +34.91.631.8392

KYOCERA MITA FINLAND OY
Kirvesmiehenkatu 4, 00880 Helsinki,
Finland
Phone: +358.9.4780.5200

KYOCERA MITA (SCHWEIZ)
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich
Switzerland
Phone: +41.1.908.4949

KYOCERA MITA DEUTSCHLAND GMBH
Otto-Hahn-Str. 12 D-40670 Meerbusch,
Germany
Phone: +49.2159.918.0

KYOCERA MITA GMBH AUSTRIA
Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95,
1230 Wien,
Austria
Phone: +43.1.86338.210

KYOCERA MITA SVENSKA AB
Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,
Sweden
Phone: +46.8.546.55000

KYOCERA MITA NORGE
Postboks 150 Oppsal, NO 0619 Oslo
Olaf Helsetsvet 6, NO 0694 Oslo,
Norway
Phone: +47.22.62.73.00

KYOCERA MITA DANMARK A/S
Ejby Industrivej 1, DK-2600 Glostrup,
Denmark
Phone: +45.5687.1100

KYOCERA MITA PORTUGAL LDA.
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisbon,
Portugal
Phone: +351.21.842.9100

KYOCERA MITA SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD.
527 Kyalami Boulevard,
Kyalami Business Park Midrand,
South Africa
Phone: +27.(0)11.540.2600

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008,
U.S.A.
Phone: (973) 808-8444

KYOCERA MITA AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road, North Ryde,
N.S.W. 2113 Australia
Phone: (02) 9888-9999

KYOCERA MITA NEW ZEALAND LTD.
1-3 Parkhead Place, Albany
P.O. Box 302 125 NHPC, Auckland,
New Zealand
Phone: (09) 415-4517

KYOCERA MITA (THAILAND) CORP., LTD.
9/209 Ratchada-Prachachem Road,
Bang Sue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand
Phone: (02) 586-0320

KYOCERA MITA SINGAPORE PTE LTD.
121 Genting Lane, 3rd Level,
Singapore 349572
Phone: 67418733

KYOCERA MITA HONG KONG LIMITED
11/F., Mita Centre,
552-566, Castle Peak Road,
Tsuen Wan, New Territories,
Hong Kong
Phone: 24297422

KYOCERA MITA TAIWAN Corporation.
7F-1~2, No.41, Lane 221, Gangchi Rd.
Neihu District, Taipei, Taiwan, 114. R.O.C.
Phone: (02) 87511560

KYOCERA MITA Corporation

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku
Osaka 540-8585, Japan
Phone: (06) 6764-3555
<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:

225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-6000

New York Branch:

1410 Broadway 23rd floor
New York, NY 10018
TEL : (917) 286-5400
FAX : (917) 286-5402

Northeastern Region:

225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-4401

Midwestern Region:

201 Hansen Court Suite 119
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191
TEL : (630) 238-9982
FAX : (630) 238-9487

Western Region:

14101 Alton Parkway,
Irvine, California 92618-7006
TEL : (949) 457-9000
FAX : (949) 457-9119

Southeastern Region:

1500 Oakbrook Drive,
Norcross, Georgia 30093
TEL : (770) 729-9786
FAX : (770) 729-9873

Southwestern Region:

2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 550-8987
FAX : (972) 252-9786

National Operation Center & National Training Center:

2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 659-0055
FAX : (972) 570-5816

Latin America Division:

8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166
TEL : (305) 421-6640
FAX : (305) 421-6666

KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada
TEL : (905) 670-4425
FAX : (905) 670-8116

KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407
Col. Santa Inés,
Azcapotzalco México,
D.F. 02130, México
TEL : (55) 5383-2741
FAX : (55) 5383-7804



©2008 KYOCERA MITA Corporation

<http://www.kyoceramita.com>



is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Printed in U.S.A.